

THAI

BASIC COURSE

Volume 1



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

WARREN G. YATES and ABSORN TRYON

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

WASHINGTON, D.C.

1970

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI

PREFACE

The FSI Thai Basic Course, Volumes I and II, provides introductory materials in modern spoken Thai for the student who wants to learn to speak and understand the language used by an estimated 20 to 22 million people in Thailand.


The programmed introduction to Thai phonology which occupies the first 25 pages of Volume I is the work of Warren G. Yates, chairman of the Department of East Asian Languages at the Foreign Service Institute. Dr. Yates and Absorn Tryon, Thai language instructor at FSI, are co-authors of the 40 lessons comprising the core of the course.

*In the early stages of the project Richard B. Noss, then chairman of the FSI Department of East Asian Languages made valuable suggestions. The authors have made extensive use of Dr. Noss's **Thai Reference Grammar** in the preparation of these volumes, and users will find that they are often referred to it for fuller explanations.*

Mr. Prapas Kanchanandul contributed drills and assisted in matters of Thai language usage. Mrs. Tryon re-read the entire text of both volumes in Thailand in late 1969 and suggested changes to make the materials current.

Mrs. Phongchan Nabangchang collected and organized the items in the glossaries which appear at the end of each lesson and the comprehensive glossary for both volumes which appears at the end of Volume I. Irma C. Ponce typed the camera copy of the entire text while Miss Chotchai Kambhu, Mr. Prasert Crupiti and Mr. Thaworn Jimreivat assisted in proofreading, having previously participated in the classroom trials of the new materials in pre-publication form. Thai language textual material was tape recorded in the FSI Language Laboratory under the direction of Gary Alley with technical assistance from Jose M. Ramirez and Arthur Young.

The Foreign Service Institute gratefully acknowledges the financial assistance of the U.S. Office of Education which has made the preparation and publication of these volumes possible.


James R. Frith, Dean
School of Language Studies
Foreign Service Institute
Department of State

THAI BASIC COURSE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Volume 1

PREFACE	111
INTRODUCTORY SECTION	
Introduction	x
Organization and Use of This Course	xi
Instructions to the Student on Use of Programmed	
Introduction to Thai Phonology	xiv
Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology	xvi
Reference Chart of Special Symbols Used in Thai	
Basic Course	xxxvii
LESSON 1.	
BASIC DIALOG	1
Notes on the Basic Dialog	1
Grammar Notes	2
1. The Personal Pronouns	2
2. Word Order in the Sentence	2
3. The Question Word 'rǎy'	2
4. Final Polite Particles	2
DRILLS	3
EXERCISES	5
VOCABULARY	6
LESSON 2.	
BASIC DIALOG	7
Notes on the Basic Dialog	8
Grammar Notes	8
1. The Question Word 'araj'	8
2. Use of 'châj máj ?' in Confirmation	9
3. Use of 'mâj châj' in Disagreement	9
4. Responding to Questions with 'rǎy'	10
DRILLS	10
EXERCISES	16
VOCABULARY	17
CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS	19
LESSON 3.	
BASIC DIALOG	20
Notes on the Basic Dialog	21
Grammar Notes	21

THAI BASIC COURSE

1. Stative Verbs	21
2. Omission of the Subject	21
3. Negation of the Verb	21
4. Use of the Question Word 'máj'	22
5. 'Plurality' in the Noun	22
6. 'jàa' in Negative Request	22
7. 'nīi, nân, nôon' in Verbless Sentences	22
8. 'rǎy' in Negative Questions	22
DRILLS	23
EXERCISES	32
VOCABULARY	33

LESSON 4.

BASIC DIALOG	35
Grammar Notes	36
1. Use of Unit Classifiers	36
2. The Classifier Phrase as a Noun Replacement...	37
3. 'khǒŋ' Used to Indicate 'Possession'	37
4. The Position of 'khraj' in the Sentence	38
5. How to Express 'Being'	38
DRILLS	39
EXERCISES	49
VOCABULARY	50

LESSON 5.

BASIC DIALOG	52
Notes on the Basic Dialog	52
Grammar Notes	56
1. Ways of Expressing Negation	56
2. <u>pen jannaŋ</u> Meaning 'What is it like to...?'...	56
DRILLS	57
EXERCISES	60
VOCABULARY	62

LESSON 6.

BASIC DIALOG	64
Grammar Notes	64
1. <u>can</u> as an Intensifier of Stative Verbs	64
2. <u>ken</u> with Noun Phrases and Verb Phrases	64
3. Verbs with Obligatory Complements	65
4. Terms Used to Refer to People	65
5. Words Relating to Names of Cities and Countries	66
6. Another Use of <u>khraj</u>	66

THAI BASIC COURSE

DRILLS	67
EXERCISES	79
COMPREHENSION TEST	80
VOCABULARY	82
LESSON 7.	
BASIC DIALOG	86
Notes on the Basic Dialog	86
Grammar Notes	87
1. <u>khəəj</u> to Indicate Past Experience	87
2. <u>paj</u> + Place Expressions	87
3. Lack of Verb Inflection	87
4. Omission of Subject Pronoun	88
5. Sentence + <u>dâj</u> to Indicate 'possibility' or 'suitability'	88
6. Sentence + <u>pen</u> to Indicate 'ability to perform some activity'	88
7. Use of <u>khəəj</u> + <u>pen</u> / <u>daj</u>	89
DRILLS	90
EXERCISES	109
VOCABULARY	110
Map of Thailand Showing Some Provinces	113
LESSON 8.	
BASIC DIALOG	115
Grammar Notes	115
1. Compounds	115
2. <u>jùu</u> + Place Expressions	118
3. Responses to <u>thamnaan araj</u>	118
4. Difference between <u>paj năj</u> and <u>paj thîinăj</u> ...	118
DRILLS	118
EXERCISES	129
VOCABULARY	130
LESSON 9.	
BASIC DIALOG	135
Grammar Notes	135
1. Means of Indicating 'Time' and 'Aspect' of the Verb	135
2. Function of the Question Words	137
GRAMMAR DRILLS	139
EXERCISES	156
VOCABULARY	158

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON 10.

BASIC EPISODE	160
Questions on Basic Episode	160
DRILLS	161
EXERCISE	170
VOCABULARY	170

LESSON 11.

BASIC DIALOG	171
Grammar Notes	172
1. Use of <u>kan</u> to Indicate 'Mutuality' and 'Plurality'	172
2. <u>araj</u> , <u>khraj</u> , and <u>năj</u> as Indefinite Pronouns ...	172
3. Numerals	173
4. <u>thfi</u> with Included Modifiers or Specifiers	174
5. <u>yyn yyn</u> as a Pluralizer	175
DRILLS	175
EXERCISES	188
VOCABULARY	189

LESSON 12.

BASIC DIALOG	191
Notes on the Basic Dialog	192
Grammar Notes	193
1. Ordinal Numbers	193
2. <u>rêsk</u> as a Number	193
3. Ordinal Numbers After Classifiers	194
4. Expressing 'Age'	194
5. <u>léew</u> and <u>jan</u> to Express State of an Action	194
6. <u>jan mâj</u> ... Versus <u>jan mâj dâj</u>	195
7. Position of Classifier Phrases Referring to Pronoun Subject	195
DRILLS	195
EXERCISES	212
VOCABULARY	212

LESSON 13.

BASIC DIALOG	215
Notes on the Basic Dialog	215
Grammar Notes	216
1. <u>lik</u> ... <u>ca</u> for Future Time	216
2. <u>paj</u> as an Indicator of Excess with <u>chaa</u> and <u>rew</u>	216
DRILLS	217
EXERCISES	229
VOCABULARY	231

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON 14.

BASIC DIALOG	233
Grammar Notes	234
1. <u>klaj</u> and <u>klâj</u>	234
2. Extent of Distance Constructions	235
3. <u>mii</u> Indicating 'existence'	235
DRILLS	236
EXERCISES	254
VOCABULARY	254

LESSON 15.

BASIC DIALOG	257
Questions on the Interview	259
EXERCISES	260
VOCABULARY	260

LESSON 16.

BASIC DIALOG	262
DRILLS	263
EXERCISES	273
VOCABULARY	274

LESSON 17.

BASIC DIALOG	
Grammar Notes	276
1. <u>paj</u> / <u>maa</u> used to Indicate Direction of Motion	276
2. Prepositions in Compounds	277
DRILLS	277
EXERCISES	286
VOCABULARY	286

LESSON 18.

BASIC DIALOG	290
Notes on the Basic Dialog	291
Grammar Notes	291
Sentence Embedding	291
DRILLS	293
EXERCISES	306
VOCABULARY	308

LESSON 19.

BASIC DIALOG	310
Grammar Drills	310
EXERCISES	317
VOCABULARY	318

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON 20.

BASIC EPISODE	319
Questions on the Basic Episode	320
EXERCISES	322
VOCABULARY	323
TEXT GLOSSARY	G-1

THAI BASIC COURSE

INTRODUCTORY SECTION

Introduction

This is the first volume of a three-volume course designed to teach Standard Thai. Standard Thai is the national spoken language of Thailand and is the dialect of educated speakers of Bangkok and Central Thailand. Standard Thai in spoken and written form is known to some extent by nearly all Thais. There are approximately 20 million speakers.

The materials contained in the first two volumes consist of the following:

- (1) A Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology,
- (2) A standard text of 40 lessons, and
- (3) A text glossary.

Not included in the text but considered to be an integral part of the course are a series of tapes consisting of taped portions of the text and other supplementary materials.

These materials were designed to be used in a course of instruction where the main focus is on teaching the student to speak and understand Thai. This is not to say that reading and writing should be ignored, but that additional materials would be required for that purpose.

Basic to the approach recommended by the authors of this text are the following tenets:

- (1) In the classroom only Thai should be spoken.
- (2) The teacher should be either a native speaker of Thai, or a non-native with excellent control of the language.
- (3) Every effort should be made to make the instruction both in and out of class approximate 'real' use of the language.
- (4) The use of audio-visual devices of all kinds (charts, films, objects, etc.) is encouraged, but they must be used in such a way as to function as an integrated part of the instruction and not just as an interesting appendage.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- (5) Language learning is a largely a function of the student's interest, motivation, and application; therefore, every effort should be made to interest and motivate him to make the requisite effort to learn the language. Next to the student, the language teacher is the most important element in the learning process; it is, therefore, imperative that the teacher not be restricted to following slavishly any particular course of study. With this in mind we encourage Thai language instructors to look upon this text and the accompanying tapes as useful devices which may be modified as required and should in no sense be thought of as the sole or even the main instruments for teaching Thai.

ORGANIZATION AND USE OF THIS COURSE

1. Basic Dialog

There is a basic dialog at the beginning of each lesson. It consists of a limited number of exchanges between two or sometimes more persons. It represents a somewhat modified version of a 'real' dialog, since hesitation phenomena, false starts, and other features regularly occurring in real speech have been eliminated. It does present what two educated Thai speakers might say in a given situation if they were being particularly careful to avoid the features referred to above.

If the student has memorized the dialogs, he will have a store of language that is readily available when needed (assuming he is in a situation comparable to that of a particular dialog). It is, therefore, suggested that some time be spent for this purpose. Most of this time should be outside of the classroom with the tape recorder, since different students memorize at different rates, and if many class hours are used for this purpose, it will prove very boring to quick learners and very frustrating to slow ones.

2. Notes

There are three kinds of notes in this text: notes on the dialog, vocabulary notes, and grammar notes. Notes on the dialog present some information that is useful for understanding the dialog. It is often cultural. Vocabulary notes are used to explain the meaning of a word in somewhat greater depth than is included in the lesson glossary. Grammar notes provide a general understanding of Thai grammar. They are written in such a manner as to be useful to even the most linguistically unsophisticated learner. All types of notes should be read and studied outside of class. If some points are still unclear, the instructor may clarify further by giving additional examples, paraphrasing, or by explaining in Thai.

3. Drills

The drills in this textbook are for the purpose of providing an opportunity for the student to isolate a particular feature (grammatical or semantic) of the language and to practice it in a limited context until he understands well how to use it and can say it with good fluency and pronunciation.

It should be clearly understood that drills of any kind are simply devices for actuating practice having a particular focus and with a limited objective, and as such they do not represent 'real communication' in language no matter how cleverly they are arranged; therefore, the instructor should be constantly alert to signs of boredom and should switch to a different type of activity before that point is reached.

All this is not to say that drills do not have a place in language teaching. It is probable that a certain number of drills are very helpful if not absolutely indispensable in learning to speaking language well.

Various kinds of drill (substitution, transformation, etc.) are found in this textbook. In most cases it is obvious from the format of the drill what procedure (substitution of an item in a sentence, rearrangement of a sentence, expansion of a sentence or phrase, etc.) is called for. In those instances where it might not be clear, special instructions are provided.

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. Exercises

'Exercises' (as the term is used in this textbook) are distinguishable from drills mainly by the type of response they elicit. Drills are designed to elicit one particular response and any other response (even if it is correct in form and meaning) is unacceptable; whereas, the only requirement in an exercise is that the response conform logically with the original request (i.e. if you are asked where a certain building is, you don't respond with a description of it instead).

The exercises in any particular lessons in this text have two basic purposes: to provide (1) a setting in which communication of a restricted kind can take place and (2) a means for the instructor to test the ability of the students to use the material in the lesson in more realistic situations.

The exercises in the lessons are an especially important part of the lesson and should be done at the end of the lesson. If students are unable to perform well the tasks presented to them, the instructor should review any parts of the lesson that seem necessary for successful completion of those tasks. In no case should students go to the next lesson until they can do the exercises easily, rapidly, and correctly.

5. Lesson and Text Glossaries

At the end of each lesson there is a list of all words occurring for the first time in that lesson and at the end of the volume there is a complete list of words in the first volume.

All entries are listed in alphabetical order (English alphabet) and are written in a phonemic transcription using Roman letters. With each noun is its unit classifier. A limited number of the more useful noun and verb compounds are included. Two examples are given below:

mǎo (khon) doctor (medical)

khâw paj to enter (away from the speaker)

khâw maa to enter (towards the speaker)

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. Taped Material

Besides the tapes which form a major part of the Programmed Introduction to Thai Phonology, there are tapes of various kinds that accompany each lesson. The dialogs and most of the essential drills are recorded on the lesson tapes; however, they are recorded in such a manner as not to be an exact duplicate of the way in which the drill will be conducted in class, since the purpose of the tapes is to supplement not replace classroom work. Special pronunciation drills and remarks are included on the tapes.

INSTRUCTIONS TO THE STUDENT ON USE OF PROGRAMMED INTRODUCTION TO THAI PHONOLOGY

The purpose of this material is to acquaint you with the significant features of the Thai sound system. 'Significant' as used here refers to those features which distinguish words; for example, in English the words sit and set are distinguished only by the quality of the two vowels; therefore, we can say that vowel quality is significant in English (i.e. if you say sit instead of set, you may be misunderstood.) It is, therefore, important that you learn to hear and produce vowel quality. On the other hand, it doesn't matter whether you pronounce the vowel in hit long or short. You may find it a little harder to understand a Southerner who pronounces hit with a slightly longer vowel than you do, but you will not confuse it with heat, which has different vowel quality. We can see then that vowel quality is significant, but vowel length isn't in English.

The significant features of the Thai sound system referred to here relate to contrasts in pitch contour, length of vowels and diphthongs, aspiration of consonants, and syllable prominence.

In addition to the sound features referred to, you will be taught to read and write the special phonetic transcription which is used in the Thai Basic Course that follows this instruction.

The following procedure should be used with these materials:

- (1) Put tape 1 of the Programmed Introduction on the tape recorder and proceed through it carrying out the instructions you hear on the tape. You will

THAI BASIC COURSE

not need to refer to the text except for those portions of the material where you are asked to read or write something.

- (2) When you are asked to write something, write it in the text and check your answers. If you need more time than is provided on the tape for checking your answers, stop the machine.
- (3) If at any time in the program, you are confused about something, stop the tape, rewind it and listen to that particular part again.
- (4) Although the program was designed primarily for use before beginning lesson one in the text, all of it or parts of it can be used profitably at later stages in the course as well.
- (5) It is suggested that you do not work for longer periods of time than 30 minutes. Take a short break, and then return. All of the tapes can be completed in one day.
- (6) Since almost all of the material is only on tape, it would be clearly impossible to do the program without the tapes and a tape recorder.

THAI BASIC COURSE

A PROGRAMMED INTRODUCTION TO THAI PHONOLOGY

(Student's Text)

Part I is on Tape only.¹

Part II, Section 1, Frames 1-10, are on Tape only.²

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
11	Observe the way this word is written in the special writing system used in this book: phaa
12	The 'ph' is used to represent the initial consonant in the word, which sounds like the 'p' in 'pat' in English. The 'aa' stands for 'long a', which sounds like 'ah' in 'father'.
13	Observe the way this word is written. Notice particularly the symbol above the vowels. phâa
14	The 'hat' or 'circumflex accent' over the first vowel is used to indicate that the vowel is pronounced with a <u>high falling</u> pitch contour.
15	Pronounce this word 3 times: phâa After each attempt listen to the tape for confirmation.

-
1. The only 'frames' that are written out in this text are those where you are asked to look at how something is written; otherwise, the content of the frame is voiced only.
 2. You will be notified by the tape when you are to refer to the written text. Be sure to cover the answer when doing a written frame.

THAI BASIC COURSE

Frame

Content

- 16 If no mark is written above the vowel, that is indication that the word is to be pronounced with a mid level pitch contour. Listen to the pronunciation of phaa.
- 17 Listen to the pronunciation of the following words and write a mark above the vowel when necessary:
(1) phaa (2) phaa (3) phaa (4) phaa (5) phaa
- Answers: (1) phâa (2) phaa (3) phaa (4) phâa (5) phâa
- 18 Listen to the following words and write them in the Thai transcription in the spaces below:
(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)
- Answers: (1) phaa (2) phâa (3) phaa (4) phâa (5) phaa
- 19 This word has low rising pitch. It is written phǎa.
- 20 The mark / ˊ / is written above the vowel to indicate that it is to be pronounced with a low rising pitch contour.
- 21 Read the following words. Check your response by the Tape.
(1) phǎa (2) phaa (3) phâa (4) phaa (5) phâa
(6) phǎa
- 22 Put the tone markers on the following words after they are pronounced on the tape.
(1) phaa (2) phaa (3) phaa (4) phaa (5) phaa
(6) phaa (7) phaa (8) phaa
- Answers: (1) phâa (2) phǎa (3) phaa (4) phâa (5) phǎa
(6) phǎa (7) phaa (8) phâa

THAI BASIC COURSE

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
23	Transcribe the following words: (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10)
Answers:	(1) phǎa (2) phaa (3) phâa (4) phǎa (5) phâa (6) phaa (7) phâa (8) phaa (9) phǎa (10) phâa

Part II Section 1, Drills, Frames 1-17 are on tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
18	This time look at the words below as they are read on the tape. Note carefully how they are written in the special writing system. (1) naa (2) nǎa (3) laa (4) hâa (5) khâa (6) mǎa (7) phaa (8) maa (9) sǎa (10) thâa (11) khaa (12) lǎa (13) daa (14) bâa (15) wâa (16) thaa (17) nâa (18) phâa (19) hǎa (20) saa
19	This time write the words you hear on the tape in the spaces below using the special writing system: (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10) (11) (12) (13) (14) (15) (16) (17) (18) (19) (20)
Answers:	(1) phâa (2) maa (3) thǎa (4) bâa (5) khâa (6) fǎa (7) haa (8) phǎa (9) nâa (10) thaa (11) khǎa (12) laa (13) hǎa (14) nâa (15) phaa (16) saa (17) thǎa (18) khaa (19) hâa (20) mǎa

THAI BASIC COURSE

Part II Section 2, Frames 1-10 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
11	The symbol / ' / above the vowel is used to indicate High pitch contour. Put the correct tone marker above the vowel in the words below: (1) chaan (2) maà (3) laan (4) khaa

Answers: (1) cháan (2) máa (3) láan (4) kháa

Part II, Section 2, Frames 12-20 are on Tape only.

21	Indicate the pitch contour of the following words by writing / ^ / for high falling pitch; / ' / for High; and nothing for mid level. (1) khaan (2) khaan (3) khaan (4) khaan (5) khaan
----	--

Answer: (1) khâan (2) kháan (3) khaan (4) khâan (5) kháan

22	Listen to these words and transcribe them below: (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8)
----	--

Answers: (1) kháan (2) khâan (3) khaan (4) kháan
(5) khâan (6) khaan (7) kháan (8) khâan

23	Read the following words and listen to the tape for pronunciation check: (1) kháan (2) khaan (3) khâan (4) khaan (5) khâan (6) kháan (7) kháan (8) khâan
----	--

THAI BASIC COURSE

Part II, Section 2 Drills, Frames 1-9 are on Tape only.

Frame

Content

- 10 Read the following words:
(1) kháa (2) nân (3) phâat (4) máa
(5) wâa (6) thâa (7) kháan (8) mâak

- 11 Write the words you hear below:

(1) (2) (3) (4)
(5) (6) (7) (8)

Answers: (1) phâa (2) náam (3) máa (4) thâa
(5) láa (6) náa (7) mâak (8) kháan

Part II, Section 3, Frames 1-5 are on Tape only.

- 6 This word is written as follows phít

- 7 Write this word: _____

Answer: phít

- 8 This word is written phít
What is the pitch contour on this word?

- 9 Do these two words sound the same?

- 10 Do these two words sound the same?

- 11 True or false? The symbol / ` / is used to indicate low pitch contour.

Answer: True

THAI BASIC COURSE

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
12	The symbol / ' / is used to indicate <u>high falling</u> pitch contour. True or false?

Answer: True

13	/ph/ is used to transcribe a sound that is like the 'p' in the English word <u>pít</u> . True or false?
----	---

Answer: True

Frames 14-17 are on Tape only.

18	This word is written <u>khâat</u>
----	-----------------------------------

19	This word is written <u>khàat</u>
----	-----------------------------------

20	Transcribe this word: _____
----	-----------------------------

Answer: khâat

21	Transcribe this word: _____
----	-----------------------------

Answer. khàat

22	Pronounce these words after the tape.
----	---------------------------------------

(1) phít (2) khâat (3) khàat (4) phít (5) khàat
(6) phít (7) phít (8) khâat (9) phít (10) khàat

23	Read these words. Check your responses with the tape.
----	---

(1) phít (2) khâat (3) khàat (4) phít (5) khàat
(6) phít (7) phít (8) khâat (9) phít (10) khàat

Part II, Section 3, Frames 24-30 are on Tape only.

31	Read the words below:
----	-----------------------

(1) phàa (2) mǎa (3) thàan (4) thǎam
(5) thàan (6) khǎan (7) nǎam (8) nǎa

THAI BASIC COURSE

Frame

Content

32 Write the words you hear in the space below:

(1) (2) (3) (4)
(5) (6) (7) (8)

Answers: (1) phaan (2) mǎa (3) phaa (4) khǎan
(5) nǎa (6) phaat (7) thǎa (8) thàan

Part III, Section 1, Frames 1-23 are on Tape only.

24 In the special phonetic alphabet used in the Thai Basic Course, aspirated t is written th (The h stands for aspiration).

25 How would you write this word in the special alphabet?

Answer: thaa

Frames 26-36 are on the Tape only.

37 The word meaning 'eye' is written taa in the special phonetic alphabet.

38 Write these words in a phonetic transcription as you hear them.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____
5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

Answers: 1. taa 2. thaa 3. thaa 4. taa
5. taa 6. thaa 7. taa 8. thaa

THAI BASIC COURSE

Part III, Section 1 Drill, Frames 1-10 are on Tape only.

Frame

Content

- 11 Listen to the following words as they are pronounced on the tape:
- (1) thaa (2) taa (3) tûu (4) thûu
(5) tîi (6) thîi (7) taa (8) thaa
(9) taan (10) thaان (11) tîi (12) thîi
(13) thaa (14) tîi (15) tûu (16) thûu
(17) thaان (18) tîi

- 12 Listen to a series of Thai words. If a word begins with an aspirated t, write th in the space beside its number; if it begins with an unaspirated t, write t after its number.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____
5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____
9. _____ 10. _____

Answers: 1. t 2. th 3. t 4. th 5. t
6. th 7. th 8. th 9. t 10. t

- 13 Transcribe the words you hear in the spaces below:

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____
5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____
9. _____ 10. _____ 11. _____ 12. _____
13. _____ 14. _____ 15. _____ 16. _____

Answers: 1. taa 2. thaان 3. taan 4. thaa 5. thaان
6. thîi 7. too 8. tîi 9. thoo 10. taa
11. tîi 12. thaان 13. thaa 14. taan 15. thaان
16. taa

THAI BASIC COURSE

Part III, Section 2, Frames 1-4 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
5	It begins with an <u>unaspirated t</u> (it doesn't have a puff of air after it) and it is written <u>tii</u> in the special alphabet.

Frames 6-8 are on Tape only.

9	It begins with <u>d</u> and is written <u>dii</u>
---	---

Frames 10-14 are on Tape only.

15	Identify the following words by writing <u>d</u> , <u>t</u> , or <u>th</u> in the blank by their numbers, after you hear them on tape.
----	--

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)

Answers: 1. d 2. th 3. th 4. t 5. d
6. th 7. d 8. t 9. th 10. d

Part III, Section 3, Frame 1-5 are on Tape only.

6	This word is written <u>phaa</u> .
---	------------------------------------

The 'h' after the 'p' shows that the 'p' is aspirated.

7	Does this word begin with an 'aspirated p'?
---	---

8	How would you write this word?: _____
---	---------------------------------------

Answer: phaa

THAI BASIC COURSE

Frames 9-18 are on Tape only.

19 The word meaning 'father's elder sister' is written pâa in the special writing system used in the text. Listen to it.

20 The word meaning 'cloth' is written phâa

21 You will now hear several repetitions of these two words. As you hear each one, write it in transcription in the space below:

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____
5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

Answers: (1) pâa (2) pâa (3) phâa (4) pâa
(5) phâa (6) phâa (7) pâa (8) phâa

Part III, Section 3 Drill, Frames 1-10 are on Tape only.

11 Listen to a series of Thai words. If a word begins with an aspirated p, write ph in the space beside its number; if it begins with an unaspirated p, write p after its number.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____
6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____ 9. _____ 10. _____

Answers: 1. p 2. ph 3. ph 4. ph 5. p 6. ph 7. p
8. p 9. ph 10. p

12 Listen to the following words as they are pronounced on the tape:

1. pâaj 2. phûu 3. pàa 4. pâa 5. pàa
6. pûu 7. phaen 8. phàa 9. phâa 10. phàn
11. paan 12. phâa 13. phaen 14. pîi 15. phǎi

THAI BASIC COURSE

Frame

Content

- 13 Write the words you hear in the phonetic transcription in the spaces below:

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____
5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____
9. _____ 10. _____ 11. _____ 12. _____
13. _____ 14. _____ 15. _____

Answers: 1. phaa 2. pâa 3. phâa 4. paan 5. phaان
6. pàa 7. phâa 8. phâa 9. pâa 10. pàa
11. phàa 12. pûu 13. phûu 14. pâaj 15. phaa

Part III, Section 4, Frames 1-8 are on Tape only.

- 9 Read the following words and check your readings with the tape.
(1) pâa (2) bâa (3) pâa (4) bâa (5) pâa
- 10 A pair of words will be spoken, if they sound the same, say 'Same'; if different, say 'Different'.
- 11 Look at the following words as they are read on the tape. Notice in particular the tone marks above the vowels;
(1) pît (2) baj (3) bâan (4) pàak (5) pân
(6) pàa (7) bàa (8) baan (9) pâa (10) bît
(11) paa

Frame

Content

12 Write the words you hear on the tape in the spaces below:

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)

Answers: 1. paa 2. baa 3. paa 4. baa 5. paa
6. baan 7. paan 8. baan 9. paa 10. paa

Note: If you didn't get most of them right including the correct tone mark, use a clean piece of paper and repeat the drill, as well as frame 11 above.

Part III, Section 4 Drill, Frames 1 and 2 are on Tape only.

3 Read the words below. Check with the tape for pronunciation.

(1) baan	(2) paa	(3) baat	(4) phuu
(5) phaa	(6) baa	(7) pii	(8) phaa
(9) paan	(10) baan	(11) baan	(12) phaa
(13) paa	(14) plaa	(15) paa	

4 Write the words you hear in transcription below:

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)
(9)	(10)		

Answers: (1) paa (2) phaa (3) baan (4) paa (5) pen
(6) phaa (7) baa (8) phaa (9) phaa (10) plaa

THAI BASIC COURSE

Part III, Section 5, Frames 1-7 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
8	In transcription <u>aspirated k</u> is writtten <u>kh</u> . The 'h' stands for the air stream. Write the symbol for the initial sound in these words: (1) (2) (3) (4)

Answer: To all 4: kh

Frames 9-12 are on Tape only.

13	Unaspirated <u>k</u> is written 'k'. In the spaces below write the symbol for the initial consonant sound in these words: (1) (2) (3) (4)
----	---

Answer: In each case is k.

Frames 14-17 are on Tape only.

18	Listen to these words. If a word begins with aspirated <u>k</u> , write <u>kh</u> opposite its number; if unaspirated <u>k</u> , write <u>k</u> . (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6)
----	---

Answers: 1. kh, 2. k, 4. kh, 5. k, 6. kh

19	Read the words below. Check your responses with the tape: (1) kàap (2) khîi (3) kîn (4) kaan (5) kàp (6) klâj (7) khâan (8) kûn (9) kàj (10) khàat (11) khaa (12) kâan
----	--

Frame

Content

20

Write these words:

- | | | | |
|-----|------|------|------|
| (1) | (2) | (3) | (4) |
| (5) | (6) | (7) | (8) |
| (9) | (10) | (11) | (12) |

Answers: (1) kaan (2) khaa (3) kâaŋ (4) khàp
 (5) khâaŋ (6) khǎn (7) kàj (8) kâan
 (9) khâaŋ (10) klaj (11) khàat (12) kàp

Part III, Section 6, Frames 1-9 are on Tape only.

10

The symbol ch is used to write the initial consonant in these words. The 'c' indicates the sound is made at the hard palate ('the ceiling of the mouth') and the 'h' indicates that there is a stream of air after the 'c'. Write the initial consonant of these words in the spaces below:

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| (1) | (2) | (3) | (4) |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|

The answer in each case above is ch. (Don't forget: 'c' for 'ceiling' and 'h' for aspiration.)

11

The initial sound in this Thai word is also made with the tongue on the hard palate (i.e. 'the ceiling' of the mouth).

12

There is no aspiration after the initial consonant.

13

This sound that is made at the hard palate and is without aspiration is written 'c'. Write the initial sound of these words in the space below:

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| (1) | (2) | (3) | (4) |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|

THAI BASIC COURSE

Frame

Content

Answers
to 13: (1) c (2) c (3) c (4) c

Frames 14-19 are on Tape only.

20 Read the following words:

(1) chàt (2) càk (3) caŋ (4) chan
(5) châat (6) cuan (7) châaw (8) cèt
(9) cèp (10) chàp (11) càak (12) càt
(13) chaa (14) caŋ (15) cam

21 Write the following words in the spaces below:

(1) (2) (3) (4)
(5) (6) (7) (8)
(9) (10) (11) (12)
(13) (14)

Answers: (1) càak (2) cham (3) cèt (4) châat
(5) chin (6) câm (7) com (8) còp
(9) choŋ (10) chaan (11) còt (12) coom
(13) caan (14) chàt

Part III, Section 7, Frames 1-3 are on Tape only.

- 4 You can hear the quality of this sound easily by saying ing several times. This sound is called a velar nasal and is written ŋ in phonetic writing. Please observe that ŋ is like n with a long bent tail on it.
- 5 The velar nasal /ŋ/ occurs finally in many English words (bring, sing, etc.) and it also occurs medially in some words (singer, etc.), but it never occurs in initial position.

THAI BASIC COURSE

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
6	This Thai word ends in a velar nasal like <u>bring</u> in English.
7	What sound do these words end in?
Answer:	ŋ
8	The final sound in these words would be written /ŋ/. True or false?
9	These words end in a nasal sound also but not the velar nasal. Listen to these words. What is the final sound?
10	Now you will hear some pairs of words. The first member of the pair ends in the velar nasal, the second, in <u>n</u> . Listen to the difference.
11	The velar nasal occurs at the beginning of some Thai words. Listen to these examples:
12	Contrast these words beginning with /ŋ/ with those beginning with /n/.

Frame 13-16 are on Tape only.

- 17 Read the following words:
- (1) ɲaa (2) ɲaan (3) ɲaam (4) ɲan
 (5) ɲuu (6) ɲâaj (7) ɲæn (8) ɲaj
- 18 Write the following words:
- (1) (2) (3) (4)

Answers: (1) ɲaa (2) ɲaam (3) ɲâaj (4) ɲaj

THAI BASIC COURSE

Part III, Section 8, Frames 1-4 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
5.	If you said 'an old oak' (with clear separation between <u>old</u> and <u>oak</u>), what you said would be written phonetically as follows:

æ n owld ? owk (The symbol ? represents the glottal stop)

Frames 6-9 are on Tape only.

10 Being careful to put a glottal stop at the end of each syllable, pronounce the following words when you hear the number:

(1) ná (2) sǎ (3) phrá (4) há (5) mí

(Note: The glottal stop symbol is not usually written after short vowels since its occurrence is predictable.)

Part III, Section 9, Frames 1-15 are on Tape only.

16 Listen to these words and write the final stops (p, t, or k) in the space below:

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)

Answers: (1) p (2) t (3) k (4) p (5) k
(6) t (7) k (8) p (9) p (10) k

THAI BASIC COURSE

Part III, Section 10, Frames 1-4 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
5	Write the final sound of these words in the space below (use ? for glottal stop):
	(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)
	(6) (7) (8) (9) (10)

Answers: 1. p 2. k 3. ? 4. t 5. ? 6. t 7. t
8. ? 9. p 10. ?

Frames 6-9 are on Tape only.

10	Write the final sound of these words below:
	(1) (2) (3) (4) (5)
	(6) (7) (8) (9) (10)

Answers: 1. âa 2. t 3. k 4. âa 5. p 6. k 7. p
8. âa 9. k 10. âa

Part IV, Section 1, Frames 1-2 are on Tape only.

- 3 The diphthong is made up of two parts:
 a as in bah plus a glide like w
 It would be written /haw/ in phonetic transcription.

Frames 4-6 are on Tape only.

- 7 The diphthong in this word could be written /aw/.
 The first part is a and the last part is a w glide.

THAI BASIC COURSE

Frames 8-10 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
11	The diphthong in this word could be written <u>aaw</u> . The first part is a long <u>a</u> and the second part is a <u>w</u> glide.
12	The <u>aa</u> and the <u>w</u> glide are about equally loud but the <u>aa</u> is considerably longer than the <u>w</u> glide. This is called a <u>long diphthong</u> .

Frames 13-18 are on Tape only.

- 19 Read the following words:
- (1) khâw (2) chaaw (3) mâw (4) plàaw
(5) sǎaw (6) câw (7) kâw (8) cháaw
- 20 Write these words in the space below:
- (1) (2) (3) (4)
(5) (6) (7) (8)

Answers: (1) khǎaw (2) sâw (3) cháaw (4) lâw
 (5) nǎaw (6) khâaw (7) raw (8) khâw

Part IV, Section 2.

- 1 This word ends in a diphthong.
- 2 The diphthong in this word is written /aj/ which means that it begins with an ah sound and ends with an 'ee' glide.
- 3 The ah sound and the ee glide are about equally loud, but the ee glide is longer.

THAI BASIC COURSE

Frames 4-9 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
10	The long diphthong in these words is written <u>aa</u> j. Write the words you hear below: (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6)

Answers: 1. chaa_j 2. daa_j 3. naa_j 4. tha_a_j 5. khǎa_j
6. bà_a_j

Frames 11-13 are on Tape only.

14	Read the words below and check your responses with the tape: (1) pa _j (2) dâ _j (3) cha _a _j (4) hâ _j (5) bà _a _j (6) tha _j
15	Write the words you hear below: (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10)

Answers: 1. na_j 2. dâ_j 3. cha_a_j 4. klaa_j 5. hâ_j
6. khǎa_j 7. jà_j 8. tha_j 9. klâ_j 10. bà_a_j

THAI BASIC COURSE

Part IV, Section 3, Frames 1-14 are on Tape only.

<u>Frame</u>	<u>Content</u>
15	Read the following words: (1) càak (2) chán (3) faŋ (4) sǎam (5) ráan (6) khan (7) thaan (8) lǎŋ (9) phâak (10) wan
16	Write the following words: (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10)

Answers: 1. wǎŋ 2. khâaŋ 3. tàaŋ 4. phan 5. láan
6. ɲaan 7. tham 8. dâam 9. thaan 10. caŋ

Part V, Section 1, Frames 1-13 are on Tape only.

Part V, Section 2, Frames 1-8 are on Tape only.

- 9 A syllable in Thai has 4 parts to it: an initial consonant, a vocalism, an optional final consonant and a pitch contour. Here are examples of each of the types of syllables:
- | | |
|---|---------|
| (a) Consonant plus long vowel | (phaa) |
| (b) Consonant plus long vowel plus nasal | (phàan) |
| (c) Consonant plus long vowel plus glide | (fàaŋ) |
| (d) Consonant plus long vowel plus stop | (khàat) |
| (e) Consonant plus short vowel plus nasal | (phan) |
| (f) Consonant plus short vowel plus glide | (paŋ) |
| (g) Consonant plus short vowel plus stop | (kàt) |

Frames 10-14 are on Tape only.

This is the end of The Programmed
Introduction to Thai Phonology.

THAI BASIC COURSE

REFERENCE CHART OF SPECIAL SYMBOLS USED IN THAI BASIC COURSE

When Thais write Thai they use the regular writing system, which is a rather complex system based on Sanscrit. After you have been studying the spoken language for 6 to 8 weeks, you will begin to learn to read in this system. Since it is fairly difficult to learn regular Thai orthography, it is considered inadvisable to require you to learn it in addition to learning the spoken language at the beginning; therefore, a special system of transcription is used throughout the first volume of the Thai Basic Course. In this system regular Roman letters plus a few phonetic symbols are used. The system is completely regular, and you will learn to read it rather quickly. In fact, if you have already finished the Programmed Introduction, you may already know most of it. Please keep in mind that no writing system reflects accurately and precisely the sound system of a language, so rely on your ears and not on any written symbols (including the regular Thai orthography) for the pronunciation of Thai words and sentences.

It will help you understand the summary of the transcription system that follows, if you are aware of 3 conventions that are used in it: (1) Vowel length is indicated by a doubling of the vowel symbol, (2) An 'h' after an initial consonant indicates that the consonant is 'aspirated', and (3) Pitch contours are indicated by placing certain kinds of symbols above vowels; thus phâa refers to an 'aspirated p', followed by 'long a', which has a 'high falling' pitch contour.

REFERENCE CHART

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Usual English Letter</u>	<u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>
b	b	similar to English <u>b</u> in <u>Samba</u> .
p	p (after <u>s</u>)	like the <u>p</u> in <u>spy</u> (no puff of air after p)

THAI BASIC COURSE

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Usual English Letter</u>	<u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>
ph	p	like the <u>p</u> in <u>pie</u> (puff of air after p)
d	d	similar to English <u>d</u> in <u>Sunday</u>
t	t (after <u>s</u>)	like the <u>t</u> in <u>sty</u> (no puff of air after <u>t</u>)
th	t	like the <u>t</u> in <u>tie</u> (puff of air after <u>t</u>)
k	k (after <u>s</u>)	like the <u>k</u> in <u>ski</u>
kh	k	like the <u>k</u> in <u>Korea</u>
c	..	between English <u>jet</u> and <u>Chet</u>
ch	ch	between <u>ch</u> in <u>cheat</u> and <u>sh</u> in <u>sheet</u>
r	r	<u>r</u> as in <u>red</u> may be used (rarely occurs in Bangkok dialect)
l	l	<u>l</u> as in <u>long</u>
m	m	<u>m</u> as in <u>me</u>
h	h	<u>h</u> as in <u>hen</u>
f	f	<u>f</u> as in <u>fun</u>
s	s	<u>s</u> as in <u>see</u>
n	n	<u>n</u> as <u>need</u>
ŋ	-ng (only final)	like <u>-ng</u> in <u>sing</u>
w	w	<u>w</u> as in <u>we</u>
j	y	<u>y</u> as in <u>yet</u>

THAI BASIC COURSE

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Usual English Letter</u>	<u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>
1	i	<u>i</u> in <u>sip</u>
11	ee, ea	<u>ee</u> as in <u>see</u>
e	e	<u>e</u> as in <u>pet</u>
ee	a, ay	<u>a</u> as in <u>made</u>
ε	a	<u>a</u> as in <u>and</u>
εε	a	<u>a</u> as in <u>fan</u>
y	..	<u>u</u> in <u>sugar</u> is somewhat similar
yy	..	....
ə	..	somewhat similar to - <u>er</u> in <u>baker</u> but shorter and without 'r' quality
əə	..	similar to <u>ə</u> but longer. British pronunciation of <u>sir</u>
a	u	somewhat similar to <u>u</u> in <u>fun</u>
aa	a	<u>a</u> as in <u>father</u>
u	oo	<u>oo</u> as in <u>look</u>
uu	ou	<u>ou</u> as in <u>you</u>
o	o	<u>o</u> as in <u>cone</u> but shorter
oo	o	<u>o</u> as in <u>so</u>
o	..	....
oo	aw	<u>aw</u> as in <u>law</u>
1w	..	....

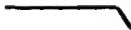








THAI BASIC COURSE

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Usual English</u> <u>Letter</u>	<u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>
ew	..	..
eeew	..	..
ew	..	..
aw	ow	<u>ow</u> as in <u>cow</u>
aaw	ow	<u>ow</u> as in <u>cow</u> (longer than aw)
uj.	..	..
ooj	..	..
oj	oy	<u>oy</u> as in <u>toy</u>
ooj	oy	<u>oy</u> as in <u>toy</u> (longer than oj)
aj	y, i	<u>y</u> as in <u>my</u>
aaaj	y, i	<u>y</u> as in <u>my</u> (longer than aj)
ia	ee, ie, e	<u>ee</u> as in <u>beer</u> (without <u>r</u>)
ya	..	..
ua	oo	<u>oo</u> as in <u>poor</u> (without <u>r</u>)
iaw	eo	<u>eo</u> as in <u>Leo</u>
yaj	..	..

THAI BASIC COURSE

THAI TONE CHART

The shapes, names and symbols used for five significant pitch contours in Thai are given below:

Written Examples:	khaa	khàa	khâa	kháa	khǎa
Approximate Pitch Range					
Name of Contour	Mid Level	Low	High Falling	High	Low Rising
Symbol	No Mark				

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON ONE

1.0 BASIC DIALOG: Greeting Someone

- | | | |
|----|-------------------------|--------------|
| A. | sawàtdii khráp | Hello. |
| | khun sabaajdií rý khráp | How are you? |
| B. | phǒm sabaajdií khráp | I'm fine. |
| | khòopkhun | Thank you. |
| | léew khun la khráp | And you? |
| A. | phǒm sabaajdií khráp | I'm fine. |

1.1 NOTE ON THE DIALOG

sawàtdii is a very common salute in Thailand. It may be used for greeting someone or for leavetaking. It is usually accompanied by a 'wai' (wâj).

The 'wai' is illustrated in the picture below. The height of the hands in the 'wai' is in inverse ratio to the age and social position of the participants. In the picture below the woman is older and is of equal or higher social status than the man.



THAI BASIC COURSE

1.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) phǒm, dichǎn, khun, and khǎw are pronouns in Thai.

phǒm means 'I' and is used by males only.

dichǎn or dihán (or in formal usage dichǎn) means 'I' and is used only by females.

khun is a polite form for 'you'.

khǎw (in slow distinct speech khǎw) means 'he, she, or they'.

- b) sabaajdii 'to be well, to be in good health' is a verb. The verb in Thai does not undergo changes in form, hence sabaajdii might be translated 'am, is, are fine' according to its subject.
- c) The subject precedes the verb in Thai, hence the sentence phǒm sabaajdii is the most common type of statement.
- d) Statements may be changed into questions by adding a question word at the end.

Statement: khun sabaajdii 'You are well.'

Question: khun sabaajdii rǎy 'Are you well?'

- e) rǎy is a question word that is used to ask for verification. It may occur after words, phrases, or sentences. It is usually unstressed and may be pronounced in any of the following ways:

When sentence final: lǎy, lǎə, rǎy, rǎə, ǎə

Before kháp (khá): rý, lý, lé, ré, é, ý

- f) kháp (or khá) is a particle used as the final element of statements or questions. It indicates that the speaker is male. It is often pronounced há? in rapid speech.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- g) khâ is a particle used as the final element of a statement. It indicates that the speaker is female. It may be pronounced hâ in rapid speech.
- h) khá is similar in usage to khâ except that it is used at the end of a question. In rapid speech há may be used instead of khá.
- i) The omission of the polite particles khráp, khâ, and khá may result in rather abrupt-sounding or impolite speech; it is, therefore, advisable to put one in at least once in each utterance.
- j) lěsw 'and' is used to connect sentences.
- k) lěsw (khun, kháw, etc.) la (khráp, khá) is a kind of echo type question; that is, it forms a question which is based on the previous statement.

Statement. phǒm sabaajdii 'I'm fine.'

Echo question: lěsw khun la khráp 'And how are you?'

1.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Expansion Drill

sabaaj	(am) fine
sabaaj dii	(am) fine
phǒm sabaaj dii	I (male) am fine.
phǒm sabaaj dii khráp	I (male) am fine.
sabaaj	(am) fine
sabaaj dii	(am) fine
dichán sabaaj dii	I (female) am fine.
dichán sabaaj dii khâ	I (female) am fine.

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>phǒm</u> sabaajdiī khráp	<u>I</u> am fine.
<u>khun</u>	<u>khun</u> sabaajdiī khráp	<u>You</u> are fine.
<u>kháw</u>	<u>kháw</u> sabaajdiī khráp	<u>He/she/they</u> is/are fine.
<u>khun</u>	<u>khun</u> sabaajdiī khráp	<u>You</u> are fine.
<u>phǒm</u>	<u>phǒm</u> sabaajdiī khráp	<u>I</u> am fine.

Repeat the drill using dichán / khâ for phǒm / khráp

c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	léew <u>khun</u> la khráp	And <u>you</u> ?
<u>kháw</u>	léew <u>kháw</u> la khráp	And he?
<u>khun</u>	léew <u>khun</u> la khráp	And <u>you</u> ?
<u>kháw</u>	léew <u>kháw</u> la khráp	And <u>they</u> ?
<u>khun</u>	léew <u>khun</u> la khráp	And <u>you</u> ?

d) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	phǒm sabaajdiī léew <u>khun</u> la khráp
<u>kháw</u>	phǒm sabaajdiī léew <u>kháw</u> la khráp
<u>khun</u>	phǒm sabaajdiī léew <u>khun</u> la khráp
<u>kháw</u>	phǒm sabaajdiī léew <u>kháw</u> la khráp
<u>khun</u>	phǒm sabaajdiī léew <u>khun</u> la khráp

Repeat the drill using dichán / khâ for phǒm / khráp.

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Transformation Drill (Change into questions with rǎy)

<u>Statement</u>	<u>Question</u>	
khun sabaajdi	khun sabaajdi <u>rǎy</u>	Are you well?
kháw sabaajdi	kháw sabaajdi <u>rǎy</u>	Is she well?
khun sabaajdi	khun sabaajdi <u>rǎy</u>	Are you well?
kháw sabaajdi	kháw sabaajdi <u>rǎy</u>	Are they well?

f) Dialog Variation Drill

If there are female members of the class, repeat the basic dialog using female pronouns and polite words.

1.4 EXERCISES

- a) Each person inquires about the health of the person next to him, to which that person replies that he is fine.
- b) The instructor asks each student how he is, and each student replies.
- c) Each student asks the instructor how he is, and the instructor responds.
- d) The instructor has student A ask student B how student C's health is, to which student B replies that it is good. (The instructor should continue this exercise until every student has asked and responded at least once.)

1.5 VOCABULARY

dichăn, dichán	I (female speaker)
dii	(to be) good
khâ, hâ	polite particle, <u>statement</u> by a female
khá, há	polite particle, <u>question</u> by a female
khăw, kháw	he, she; they (third person, singular and plural). It does <u>not</u> refer to things.
khòopkhun	thank you
kh ráp, há?, kháp	polite particle, used in statements and questions by males
khun	you (singular only) polite form
la	question word
lếw	and (sentence connective)
phỏm	I (male speaker)
rỷy, rý, lỷy, lý	question word
sabaajdii	to feel well, be in good health
sawàtdii	hello (used for greeting or leavetaking)

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWO

2.0 BASIC DIALOG: Finding Out Someone's Name

Prabas:	sawàtdīī khráp	Hello.
	phǒm chýy praphâat	My name is Prabas.
	khǎothôot, khun chýy	Excuse me. What's your
	araj khráp.	name?
John:	phǒm chýy cōon khráp	My name's John.
Prabas:	khǎothôot, khun chýy	Excuse me. What's your
	araj nakhráp	name?
	karunaa phûut līk thīī,	Could you please repeat
	dâj māj khráp	that?
John:	phǒm chýy cōon khráp	My name's John.
	khǎothôot, khun praphâat	Excuse me, Mr. Prabas
	naamsakun araj khráp	what? (family name)
Prabas:	phǒm naamsakun rákthaj	My family name's Rakthai.
	khráp	
	khǎothôot, khun cōon	Excuse me, Mr. John
	naamsakun samít, chāj	Smith, isn't it?
	māj khráp	

NOTE: For female members of the class use Mary (mæerīī) and the appropriate pronouns and particles instead of John. If the instructor is female, malī may be used instead of praphâat with appropriate changes.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- John: māj chāj khráp No, it isn't.
 phǒm naamsakun braawn My family name's Brown.
- Prabas: cǒon braaw rěkháp John Brown, huh?
- John: khráp That's right.

2.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) chây means 'name' or 'to be named' but refers only to the first or given name.
- b) naamsakun means 'family or last name'.
- c) khǎothôot means 'excuse me' or 'pardon me' and is used in the same way as the English words.
- d) karunaa means 'please, kindly...' and is followed by a request form.
- e) lik thi 'again' means literally 'an additional time.'
- f) khun is a polite title that may be used with names of either sex. It is normally put before a person's given name, since that is the name that one is usually addressed by in Thailand.

khun aarii 'Miss Aree', khun thǎawoon 'Mr. Thaworn',
khun nonkhraan 'Mrs. Nongkran'

khun may be placed before the family names of foreigners, thus khun braawn 'Mr. Brown'.

2.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The word aj 'what?' occupies the same position in the sentence as the word it refers to:

Question: khun chây araj 'What's your name?'

Answer: phǒm chây cǒon 'My name's John.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

- b) When châj máj is added to a statement, it becomes a question. It is used when the speaker is seeking confirmation of something. It is very similar in usage to rǎy (see 1.2e) which it can replace in many situations.

Question: khun chýy thǎawoon, 'Your name's Thaworn,
châj máj khráp isn't it?

Affirmative response:

châj khráp 'Yes, it is.'

Negative response:

mâj châj khráp 'No, it isn't.'

- c) If one wishes to disagree with a question with chýy and give additional information, it can be done in either of the following ways:

Question: khun chýy sǒmsàk, 'Your name's Somsak,
châj máj khráp isn't it?'

Negative response 1:

mâj châj khráp 'No, it's not.'

phǒm chýy prichaa¹ 'My name's Pricha.'

mâj châj sǒmsàk 'It isn't Somsak.'

Negative response 2:

phǒm chýy prichaa 'My name's Pricha.'

phǒm mâj dâj chýy 'I'm not named

sǒmsàk Somsak.'

Observe that mâj châj can occur before a name (a noun) but not before chýy (a verb). mâj dâj must be used before chýy.

¹Do not use contrastive stress as you would in English ('My name's Prichaa. It isn't Somsak.').

THAI BASIC COURSE

- d) Questions ending with rǎy are normally answered affirmatively with khráp, which indicates that what the speaker assumed to be true is indeed true.

Question: khun chǎy praphâat-rǎy khráp 'You're named Prapas?'

Affirmative response:

khráp 'That's right.'

The usual negative response to questions with rǎy is mâj chǎj, thus

Question: khun chǎy prīichaa rǎy khráp '(You're) Prīichaa?'

Negative response:

mâj chǎj khráp 'No, I'm not.'
(phǒm... chǎy...) I'm...

If one wishes to register strong disagreement with a rǎy question, he may respond with plàaw.

Question: khǎw chǎy prīichaa rǎy khráp 'He's named Prīichaa?'

Negative response:

plàaw khráp, khǎw mâj dâj chǎy prīichaa 'No, he's not named
khǎw chǎy sǒmsàk Prīichaa. He's Somsak.'

2.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Expansion Drills

araj

araj khráp

chǎy araj khráp

khun chây araj khráp
khǎothôt, khun chây araj khráp
cǎon
cǎon khráp
chây cǎon khráp
phǎm chây cǎon khráp

araj
araj khráp
chây araj khráp
kháw chây araj khráp

dík
dík khráp
chây dík khráp
kháw chây dík khráp

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drills

1. A: khǎothôt, khun chây araj khráp
 John: phǎm chây cǎon khráp
2. A: khǎothôt, khun chây araj khráp
 Mary: díchán chây mǎeríi khâ
3. A: khǎothôt, khun chây araj khráp
 Bill: phǎm chây bín khráp
4. A: khǎothôt, khun chây araj khráp
 George: phǎm chây cǎon khráp
5. A: khǎothôt, khun chây araj khráp
 Dick: phǎm chây dík khráp

¹Whenever masculine pronouns and polite forms occur, the instructor may replace them with the equivalent feminine forms. To save space generally only the masculine forms will be given.

THAI BASIC COURSE

c) Response Drill

The teacher asks the question khun chây araj (What's your name?) and each student responds with phôm chây --- (My name is ---.) giving his correct name.

d) Response Drill

The teacher has each student address the following question to him: khun chây araj and the teacher responds with his correct name.

e) Response Drill

Teacher asks each student the following question: khǎo-thoot, khun chây araj and each student responds with his correct name. phôm chây ---.

f) Response Drill

Pairs of students take turns asking and answering the question: khǎothôot khun chây araj

g) Response Drill

Each student asks another student his name using an incorrect name, to which the student responds by giving his correct name.

h) Response Drill

The following question is to be asked using the real names of the students:

Question: khun chây (X), châj máj khráp?

Answer: châj khráp, phôm chây (X)

i) Response Drill

Question: khun chây (X), châj máj khráp

Answer: mâj châj khráp, phôm chây (Y)

THAI BASIC COURSE

j) Response Drill

The question following may be used with the correct or incorrect name of the student addressed. The answer given will depend on the question.

Question: khun chây (X), chây máj khráp

Answer: máj chây khráp, phǒm chây (Y)
chây khráp, phǒm chây (X).

Drills h, i, and j, may be repeated with khǒothôot preceding each question if desired.

k) Response Drill

The teacher has each student address to him the question khun chây (X), chây máj using an incorrect name to which he gives the following response:

máj chây khráp	That's not right,
phǒm chây (Y)	my name is Y.
máj chây (X)	It isn't X.

or

phǒm chây (Y)	My name is Y.
phǒm máj dâj chây (X)	My name isn't X.

l) Transformation Drill (Use actual names of students.)

<u>Student 1</u>	<u>Student 2</u>
phǒm chây <u>coon</u>	sawàtdii khráp, khun <u>coon</u>
dichán chây <u>mserfi</u>	sawàtdii khráp, khun <u>mserfi</u>
	<u>or</u> sawàtdii khâ, khun <u>mserfi</u>

THAI BASIC COURSE

m) Substitution Drill

Have the students (in pairs) participate in short dialogs like the model below using their actual names:

S-1: khun chây araj khráp What's your name?

S-2: phǒm chây coon My name's John.

S-1: coon rěkháp It's John, is it?

mâj châj cóoc rěkháp It isn't George?

S-2: mâj châj khráp No, it isn't.

n) Expansion Drill

nakhráp (Question)

araj nakhráp What?

chây araj nakhráp What is your name?

nakhráp (Question)

araj nakhráp What?

naamsakun araj nakhráp What's your family name?

nakhráp (Question)

araj nakhráp What?

wâa araj nakhráp ...

phûut wâa araj nakhráp What did (you) say?

khun phûut wâa araj nakhráp What did you say?

THAI BASIC COURSE

o) Progressive Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	<u>khun</u> chây araj nakhráp
<u>kháw</u>	<u>kháw</u> chây araj nakhráp
<u>naamsakun</u>	<u>kháw</u> <u>naamsakun</u> araj nakhráp
<u>khǎothôot</u> , <u>khun</u>	<u>khǎothôot</u> , <u>khun</u> naamsakun araj nakhráp
<u>chây</u>	<u>khun</u> <u>chây</u> araj nakhráp
<u>kháw</u>	<u>kháw</u> chây araj nakhráp
<u>naamsakun</u>	<u>kháw</u> <u>naamsakun</u> araj nakhráp
<u>khǎothôot</u> , <u>khun</u>	<u>khǎothôot</u> , <u>khun</u> naamsakun araj nakhráp
<u>chây</u>	<u>khun</u> <u>chây</u> araj nakhráp

p) Transformation Drill (Asking for repetitions)

MODEL: Instructor: phǎm chây praphâat khráp
Student: khǎothôot, khun chây araj nakhráp
karunaa phûut lik thi, dâj máj khráp
Instructor: phǎm chây praphâat khráp

Cue: 1. kháw chây prichaa.
2. dichán naamsakun kamphuu
3. kháw naamsakun rákthaj
4. phǎm chây sǎmsàk

THAI BASIC COURSE

q) Response Drill

Affirmative: Instructor:

brawn rěkháp

It's Brown, is it?

Yes.

Student:

khráp

Yes (It is).

Negative: Instructor:

brawn rěkháp

It's Brown, is it?

No.

Student:

mâj châj khráp

No (It isn't).

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
yes	chây coon rěkháp	khráp
no	khun thăawoon rěkháp	mâj châj khráp
yes	kháw ǎe khráp	khráp
no	samít ǎe khráp	mâj châj khráp
yes	naamsakun samít rěkháp	khráp

2.4 EXERCISES (Students are to take the roles below:)

- Mr. Jones meets Mr. Smith on the street. They greet each other and inquire about each other's health.
- Mr. Wichai meets Miss Nongkhraan and says, 'Excuse me. Isn't your name Absorn'. Miss Nongkhraan says that is not correct but that her correct name is Nongkhraan.
- Mr. Prichaa sees Mr. Wichai and says, 'Hello, Mr. Somsak.' Mr. Wichai says, 'Excuse me.' My name is not Somsak. It's Wichai'.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- d) Mr. Smith meets a Thai at the Embassy and says, 'Excuse me. What is your name?' The man says, 'My name is Prichaa. What's yours?' Smith gives his name.
- e) Miss Nongkhraan accidentally bumps Mr. Wichai and asks his pardon.

The teacher asks the students to bring in pictures of well-known persons. In class the students ask each other the names of the persons pictured, sometimes intentionally using the incorrect name.

2.5 VOCABULARY

araj	what (question word)
lik	in addition, more
lik thii	again, one more time
bin	Bill (name)
braaw(n)	Brown (name)
châj	to be so, to be it, be the one (meant, intended)
châj máj	Isn't it so? Isn't it the one?
chÿy	name, to be named
cóc	George (name)
con	John (name)
dâj máj	Can (you)? Could (you)? Are (you) able to?
dík	Dick (name)
kamphuu	Kambhu (Thai family name)
karunaa	please, kindly
khǎothôot	excuse me
khun	Mr, Mrs., Miss (a polite title)
malí	Malee (Thai girl's name)
mâj châj	It is not so. It is not the one (meant). (Negative response)

THAI BASIC COURSE

mǎj, máj	question word
mæɛrɿi	Mary (name)
na, ná	particle used to make the question sound less abrupt
naamsakun	family name
phûut	to speak, talk, say
plàaw	No (it isn't so). Particle indicating strong disagreement with the information content of the question)
praphâat	Prabas (Thai male first name)
prichaa	Pricha (Thai male first name)
rákthaj	Rakthai (Thai family name)
samít	Smith (name)
thǎawoon	Thaworn (Thai male first name)
thii	instance, case, time
wâa	that (when used with verbs like <u>phûut</u>)

CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS

phûut ìik thii	Please repeat.
phûut taam phǒm/dichǎn	Please repeat after me.
fan	Please listen.
khun phûut phít	You said it wrong.
khun phûut thùuk léew	You said it right.
looŋ phûut ìik thii	Try to say it.
sǎaŋ khun phít	Your tone is wrong.
sǎaŋ khun thùuk	Your tone is right.
phûut phaasǎa thaj	Please speak in Thai.
jàa phûut phaasǎa aŋkrít	Don't speak English.
phûut phrǒom kan	Please say it in chorus
tòop thii la khon	Answer one at a time.
phûut dan dan nòoj	Speak louder.
pèet naŋsǎy	Open your book.
pít náŋsǎy	Close your book.
jàa duu náŋsǎy	Don't look at your book.

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THREE

3.0 BASIC DIALOG: Identifying Objects

A: khun mii phěenthîi máj khráp	Do you have a map?
B: mii khráp	I do.
A: dii máj khráp	Is it good?
B: dii khráp	It's good.
A: nîi araj khráp	What's this?
B: nân rûup khráp	That's a picture.
A: rûup araj khráp	A picture of what?
B: rûup wát khráp	A picture of a temple.
A: sǔaj máj khráp	Is it pretty?
B: sǔaj khráp	It's pretty.
A: lésw nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	And what's this called?
B: rîak wâa nâatàan khráp	It's called a 'window'.
A: khǒothôot, jàa pèet nâatàan khráp	Excuse me. Don't open the window.
B: khǒothôot, khun phûut wâa araj khráp	Excuse me. What did you say?
phǒm mâj khâwcaj	I didn't understand.
karunaa phûut cháa cháa nòoj,	Could you please speak slowly.
dâj máj khráp	
A: phǒm phûut wâa jàa pèet nâatàan	I said, 'Don't open the window.'

NOTE: The instructor should have the objects referred to before him and should point to them when necessary.

THAI BASIC COURSE

3.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) wát is used to refer to the Buddhist temple compound. This includes the temple and other related buildings in the compound (usually fenced in with a gate). It may be translated as 'church, etc.' when referring to places of worship for other religions.
- b) nǎaw means 'cold' when referring to the weather or a person's feeling about the weather.
- c) cháa means 'slow(ly)'. It is repeated for emphasis.
- d) nîi refers to a place near the speaker; nân away from the speaker; and nôn, still farther away from the speaker, but within view.

3.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) dii, sǔaj, nǎaw, and rón are called stative verbs in Thai. They can be translated as 'to be good', 'to be pretty', 'to be cold', and 'to be hot'.
- b) When the meaning is clear the subject of the sentence may be omitted, thus:

Question: mii tó máj khráp Do (you) have a table?
Answer: mii khráp (I) do.

- c) A negative sentence is formed by repeating mâj before the main verb:

mâj mii 'don't have'
mâj dii '(is) not good', etc.

- d) máj (in slow speech mǎj) is a question word that is used when a simple YES or NO answer is expected. The affirmative answer is a repetition of the main verb:

Question: mii nánsǔy máj khráp Do you have a book?
Answer: mii khráp I do.

THAI BASIC COURSE

In the negative answer mâj is repeated before the main verb:

Question: mii nánsǎy máj Do you have a book?

Answer: mâj mii khráp (No) I don't.

- e) There is no distinction in form between the singular and plural of nouns in Thai, thus tó means 'a table' or 'tables' (in general).

However, plurality in general may be indicated by other forms in the Noun Phrase, thus:

tó di di 'some good tables'

where repeating the stative verb di serves this purpose.

- f) When jaa 'don't' is repeated before a command or request form, it is changed into a negative command or request:

pèet pratau khráp Open the door.

jaa pèet pratau khráp Don't open the door.

- g) After verbs like phûut 'to say', rîak 'to be called', etc. wâa must be used.

phôm phûut wâa jaa pèet pratau 'I said, "Don't open the door."'

- h) When nîi 'this', nân 'that', or nôn 'that one over there' is the subject, the sentence has no verb expressed.

nîi tó 'This (is) a table.'

(Note: In rather formal usage khyy 'to be' could be used.)

- i) When Yes-No type questions are asked in the negative, rǎy is the question word used. máj can not be used.

Negative question:

roonrīan māj dīi rŷy 'Isn't the school any good?'

Confirmatory response:

kh ráp 'No, it isn't.'

Since kh ráp is used to indicate that the information in the question is correct, and the information was given in the negative, it must be translated as 'No, it isn't.' plàaw as a response would indicate that the information in the question was incorrect, and it would be translated something like 'On the contrary'. plàaw is usually followed by a sentence giving the correct information:

Negative question:

aahǎan māj dīi 'The food isn't any
rěkh ráp good, huh?'

Contradictory response:

plàaw kh ráp, dīi 'On the contrary it's good.'

3.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>nân</u> araj kh ráp	What's that?
<u>nôn</u>	<u>nôn</u> araj kh ráp	What's that (over there)?
<u>nīi</u>	<u>nīi</u> araj kh ráp	What's this?
<u>nân</u>	<u>nân</u> araj kh ráp	What's that?
<u>nôn</u>	<u>nôn</u> araj kh ráp	What's that (over there)?
<u>nīi</u>	<u>nīi</u> araj kh ráp	What's this?
<u>nân</u>	<u>nân</u> araj kh ráp	What's that?

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
1) nân araj khráp (nân) pratuu khráp	'door'
2) nân araj khráp (nân) nâataaŋ khráp	'window'
3) nân araj khráp (nân) tó khráp	'table'
4) nân araj khráp (nân) náŋsŷy khráp	'book'
5) nân araj khráp (nân) samùt khráp	'notebook'
6) nân araj khráp (nân) phěenthîi khráp	'map'
7) nân araj khráp (nân) kradaandam khráp	'blackboard'
8) nân araj khráp (nân) dînsǎo khráp	'pencil'
9) nân araj khráp (nân) pàakkaa khráp	'pen'

Note: The instructor points at the object referred to during the drill.)

c) Response Drill

While pointing at the objects referred to in Drill b, the instructor asks questions and the students respond as in the following example:

Instructor: nîi araj khráp Student: nân náŋsŷy khráp

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
1) nân rîak wâa araj khráp	pratuu khráp
2) nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	náŋsŷy khráp
3) nôon rîak wâa araj khráp	kradaandam khráp
4) nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	tó khráp
5) nân rîak wâa araj khráp	naalikaa khráp
6) nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	pàakkaa khráp
7) nîi rîak wâa araj khráp	kâwîi khráp

Note: The instructor points at the object referred to during the drill.

THAI BASIC COURSE

h) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	<u>Response</u>
yes	khun mii náŋsŷy máj khráp	mii khráp
no	khun mii kradàat máj khráp	mâj mii khráp
yes	khun mii samùt máj khráp	mii khráp
no	khun mii dīnsŷŋ máj khráp	mâj mii khráp
yes	khun mii phĕenthĕi máj khráp	mii khráp
no	khun mii burĕi máj khráp	mâj mii khráp
no	khun mii rūup máj khráp	mâj mii khráp

i) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
yes	kháw dīi máj	dīi khráp
no	kháw dīi máj	mâj dīi khráp
yes	roonrian dīi máj	dīi khráp
no	khun rŏon máj	mâj rŏon khráp
yes	aakaat năaw máj	năaw khráp
no	aahăan dīi máj	mâj dīi khráp
yes	rūup sŷaj máj	sŷaj khráp
no	náŋsŷy dīi máj	mâj dīi khráp

j) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	phĕenthĕi dīi máj	Is the <u>map</u> good?
<u>náŋsŷy</u>	<u>náŋsŷy</u> dīi máj	Is the <u>book</u> good?
<u>kháw</u>	<u>kháw</u> dīi máj	Is <u>he</u> good?
<u>roonrian</u>	<u>roonrian</u> dīi máj	Is the <u>school</u> good?
<u>khruu</u>	<u>khruu</u> dīi máj	Is the <u>teacher</u> good?
<u>pàakkaa</u>	<u>pàakkaa</u> dīi máj	Is the <u>pen</u> good?

THAI BASIC COURSE

<u>dinsǎo</u>	<u>dinsǎo</u> dii máj	Is the <u>pencil</u> good?
<u>kradaandam</u>	<u>kradaandam</u> dii máj	Is the <u>blackboard</u> good?
<u>naalikaa</u>	<u>naalikaa</u> dii máj	Is the <u>watch</u> good?
<u>kradaat</u>	<u>kradaat</u> dii máj	Is the <u>paper</u> good?
<u>aahǎan</u>	<u>aahǎan</u> dii máj	Is the <u>food</u> good?

k) Progressive Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	aakàat <u>dii</u>	The weather's good.
<u>nǎaw</u>	aakàat <u>nǎaw</u>	The weather's cold.
<u>phǒm</u>	<u>phǒm</u> nǎaw	I'm cold.
<u>kháw</u>	<u>kháw</u> nǎaw	They're cold.
<u>sǔaj</u>	<u>kháw</u> <u>sǔaj</u>	They're pretty.
<u>rûup</u>	<u>rûup</u> sǔaj	The picture's pretty.
<u>pàakkaa</u>	<u>pàakkaa</u> sǔaj	The pen's pretty.
<u>dii</u>	<u>pàakkaa</u> <u>dii</u>	The pen's good.
<u>aahǎan</u>	<u>aahǎan</u> dii	The food's good.
<u>róon</u>	<u>aahǎan</u> <u>róon</u>	The food's hot.
<u>kháw</u>	<u>kháw</u> róon	He's hot.
<u>dii</u>	<u>kháw</u> <u>dii</u>	He's good.

l) Transformation Drill (Change statements into questions)

<u>Statement</u>	<u>Question</u>
roonrian dii	roonrian dii máj
rûup sǔaj	rûup sǔaj máj
wát sǔaj	wát sǔaj máj
aakàat nǎaw	aakàat nǎaw máj
aahǎan dii	aahǎan dii máj
khun róon	khun róon máj

THAI BASIC COURSE

m) Transformation Drill (Change statements into the negative)

<u>Statement</u>	<u>Negative</u>
roonrian dii	roonrian mâj dii
aakàat năaw	aakàat mâj năaw
kháw rón	kháw mâj rón
aahăan dii	aahăan mâj dii
rûup sŭaj	rûup mâj sŭaj
khruu dii	khruu mâj dii

n) Transformation Drill (Change from Negative Statement to Negative Question:)

<u>Negative Statement</u>	<u>Negative Question</u>
1. roonrian mâj dii	roonrian mâj dii rŷy
2. aakàat mâj năaw	aakàat mâj năaw rŷy
3. kháw mâj rón	kháw mâj rón rŷy
4. rûup mâj sŭaj	rûup mâj sŭaj rŷy
5. khruu mâj dii	khruu mâj dii rŷy

o) Transformation Drill (Change the statements into questions)

<u>Statement</u>	<u>Questions</u>
kháw dii	kháw dii máj khráp
kháw mâj dii	kháw mâj dii rě khráp
kháw rón	kháw rón máj khráp
aahăan mâj rón	aahăan mâj rón rě khráp
rûup mâj sŭaj	rûup mâj sŭaj rě khráp
roonrian dii	roonrian dii máj khráp
khruu dii	khruu dii máj khráp
phěenthŭi mâj dii	phěenthŭi mâj dii rě khráp
aahăan mâj dii	aahăan mâj dii rě khráp
kháw sŭaj	kháw sŭaj máj khráp

p) Response Drill

Students will indicate they are in agreement with the instructor's questions.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1) naalikaa dii rěkháp	kháp (dii)
2) roonrian mâj dii rěkháp	kháp (mâj dii)
3) khun năaw rěkháp	kháp (năaw)
4) aahăan mâj dii rěkháp	kháp (mâj dii)
5) rūup sŭaj rěkháp	kháp (sŭaj)

q) Response Drill

Students will indicate they are in strong disagreement with the instructor's question.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1) naalikaa dii rěkháp	plàaw kháp (mâj dii)
2) roonrian mâj dii rěkháp	plàaw kháp (dii)
3) khun năaw rěkháp	plàaw kháp (mâj năaw)
4) aahăan mâj dii rěkháp	plàaw kháp (dii)
5) rūup sŭaj rěkháp	plàaw kháp (mâj sŭaj)

r) Transformation Drill (Change the sentences into Noun Phrases - Noun + Modifier).

<u>Sentence</u>	BECOMES	<u>Noun Phrase</u>
nănsŷy dii 'The book(s) is/are good.'		nănsŷy dii dii '(some) good books'
1) phěenthfi dii		phěenthfi dii dii
2) aahăan dii		aahăan dii dii
3) pàakkaa dii		pàakkaa dii dii

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 4) roonrian dii | roonrian dii dii |
| 5) rûup sǎaj | rûup sǎaj sǎaj |
| 6) khruu dii | khruu dii dii |

s) Expansion Drill

The instructor has the students give an expanded form of the noun; for example, pàakkaa becomes pàakkaa dii dii, etc.

Cue

Expanded Form

khun mii <u>pàakkaa</u> máj	khun mii <u>pàakkaa dii dii</u> máj
khun mii <u>dinsǎo</u> máj	khun mii <u>dinsǎo dii dii</u> máj
khun mii <u>khruu</u> máj	khun mii <u>khruu dii dii</u> máj
khun mii <u>roonrian</u> máj	khun mii <u>roonrian dii dii</u> máj
khun mii <u>phyan</u> máj	khun mii <u>phyan dii dii</u> máj
khun mii <u>rûup</u> máj	khun mii <u>rûup dii dii</u> máj
khun mii <u>nánsǎy</u> máj	khun mii <u>nánsǎy dii dii</u> máj

t) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern (Request Form)

	pèet <u>pratuu</u> khráp	Open the door.
<u>nánsǎy</u>	pèet <u>nánsǎy</u> khráp	Open (your) book(s).
<u>faj</u>	pèet <u>faj</u> khráp	Turn on the lights.
<u>nâataaŋ</u>	pèet <u>nâataaŋ</u> khráp	Open the window.
<u>samùt</u>	pèet <u>samùt</u> khráp	Open (your) notebook.
<u>pratuu</u>	pèet <u>pratuu</u> khráp	Open the door.

Note to the instructor: Have the students perform some of the actions referred to above.

- u) Transformation Drill (Change the request forms into the negative.)

<u>Request Form</u>	<u>Negative Request Form</u>
pèet nâatàan khráp	<u>jàa</u> pèet nâatàan khráp
pìt faj khráp	<u>jàa</u> pìt faj khráp
duu nánsǎy khráp	<u>jàa</u> duu nánsǎy khráp
duu naalikaa khráp	<u>jàa</u> duu naalikaa khráp
pìt pratuu khráp	<u>jàa</u> pìt pratuu khráp

- v) Transformation Drill (Change the sentences below to others having similar meaning, egs. don't open: close.)

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
<u>jàa</u> pèet nánsǎy	pìt nánsǎy
<u>jàa</u> pèet pratuu	pìt pratuu
pìt faj	<u>jàa</u> pèet faj
pìt nâatàan	<u>jàa</u> pèet nâatàan

Drills t, u, and v may be repeated with karunaa 'kindly' or pròot 'please' before the affirmative and negative requestion forms. This will result in more polite forms.

- 1) jàa pìt pratuu becomes karunaa jàa pìt pratuu
- 2) pèet faj becomes pròot pèet faj

The forms with karunaa, can be made even more formal and polite by adding dâj māj khráp:

- 1) pìt pratuu becomes karunaa pìt pratuu (nòoj), dâj māj khráp 'Would you be so kind as to close the door'.

w) Response Drill

The instructor asks the question: khun phûut wâa araj khráp 'What did you say?' and gives the cue sentences. The student combines phǒm phûut wâa... 'I said' with the cue sentence.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
jàa pèet nâataan	phǒm phûut wâa jáa pèet nâataan
jàa duu nán̄sǎy	phǒm phûut wâa jáa duu nán̄sǎy
pít nán̄sǎy	phǒm phûut wâa pít nán̄sǎy
phûut taam khruu	phǒm phûut wâa phûut taam khruu (phûut taam 'repeat')
phûut cháacháa nòoj	phǒm phûut wâa phûut cháa cháa nòoj
phǒm nǎaw	phǒm phûut wâa phǒm nǎaw

3.4 EXERCISES

- Find out from some of the other students or the instructor what the names of some of the objects in the classroom are.
- Ask some of the other students or the instructor about their possessions (i.e. what they have).
- Get an opinion (whether something is 'good' or 'beautiful') about some of the objects in the room.
- Tell another student that you are either cold, beautiful, or hot and find out if he (or she) is hot, beautiful, or cold.
- Ask another student to perform certain acts (close the door, etc.) for you. Use different kinds of request forms.
- Ask another student not to do certain things.

- g) The instructor asks a student if he has a (watch, etc.). If the student says he does have a (watch, etc.), the instructor says, 'This is your (watch, etc.), isn't it? (pointing at a watch). The student responds to the question.

3.5 VOCABULARY

aakàat	weather, air
aahǎan	food
burìi	cigarette
cháa	slow(ly)
dinsǒo	pencil
duu	to look at
faj (fáa)	electric light, electricity
kâwfî	chair
khâwcaj	to understand
khruu	teacher
kradaandam	blackboard
kradàat	paper
jàa	don't (negative request form)
mîi	to have
naalikaa	watch, clock
nâataaŋ	window
nǎaw	(to be) cold
nân	that (one), there
náŋsǎyphim	newspaper
nîi	this (one), here
nôn	that (one) over there, over there
nòoj	here <u>nòoj</u> is used to make the request less abrupt
ŋæen	money

THAI BASIC COURSE

pàakkaa	pen
pèet	to open, turn on (lights)
pìt	to close, turn off (lights)
phěnthîi	map
phûut	to say, speak
phûut taam	to repeat after
phÿan	friend
pratuu	door, gate
pròot	please (request form)
rîak wâa	to be called
roonrian	school
rónn	to be hot (temperature)
rûup	picture
samùt	notebook
sǎaj	(to be) pretty, beautiful
tó	table, desk
wát	temple, temple compound

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON FOUR

4.0 BASIC DIALOG: Establishing Identity and Ownership of Objects.

- | | |
|--|--|
| A: chûaj sòn nánssýy lêm nán
hâj phôm nõøj, dâj máj khráp | Could you hand me that
book? |
| B: dâj khráp
nánssýy lêm níi dii
khõøj khraaj khráp | Yes.
This book is good.
Whose is it? |
| A: khõøj phýan phôm khráp | A friend of mine. |
| B: phýan khun chýy araj khráp | What's your friend's name? |
| A: (kháw chýy) cõøn khráp | His name's John. |
| B: khon năj chýy cõøn khráp | Which person is named John? |
| A: khon nóøn khráp | That person over there. |
| B: léew nân khraaj khráp | Then who's (that) there? |
| A: phûujýn rý phûuchaaj khráp | The woman or the man? |
| B: phûuchaaj khráp | The man. |
| A: nân nákrían khráp | That's a student. |
| B: khun rúucàk kháw máj khráp | Do you know him? |
| A: rúucàk khráp | Yes, I do. |
| B: kháw pen khraaj khráp | Who is he? |
| A: kháw pen phýan phôm khráp | He's my friend. |

4.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The following type of construction is used to indicate the number of items when referring to concrete nouns:

<u>Noun</u> + <u>Number</u> + <u>Unit Classifier</u> ¹			
<u>nānsǎy</u>	<u>sǎɔŋ</u>	<u>lēm</u>	'two books'
<u>nákrian</u>	<u>sǎɔŋ</u>	<u>khon</u>	'two students'
<u>kāwǎi</u>	<u>sǎɔŋ</u>	<u>tua</u>	'two chairs'

When specifying a particular noun in a class, the following type of construction is used:

<u>Noun</u> + <u>Unit Classifier</u> + <u>Determiner</u>			
<u>phŷan</u>	<u>khon</u>	<u>nán</u>	'That friend'
<u>samùt</u>	<u>lēm</u>	<u>níi</u>	'This notebook'
<u>pàakkaa</u>	<u>dâam</u>	<u>nǎj</u>	'which pen?'

A unit classifier is one of a special class of nouns which are used in constructions to enumerate or specify concrete nouns. There are about 200 unit classifiers in Thai, and each of them is normally used with a large number of concrete nouns of very different meanings.

Since the unit classifier must be used in any situation in which you wish to indicate the number of items (of concrete nouns) or wish to specify a particular item out of a group (of concrete nouns), you will have to learn which unit classifier is used with each noun. Since there is usually no obvious connection between the classifier and its Noun, using the correct one will be a matter of having learned it.

There are a few classifiers for which noun reference is relatively predictable:

¹For a full treatment of unit classifiers, see Noss, Richard B., Thai Reference Grammar, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1964, pp. 104, 105.

<u>Unit Classifier</u>	<u>Noun Reference</u>
<u>khon</u>	People (professions and positions held by people)
<u>tua</u>	animals, objects with arms and legs
<u>phèen</u>	flat objects
<u>baj</u>	containers
<u>thên</u>	sticks

- b) After a noun has been mentioned or otherwise identified, Classifier+Determiner or Number+Classifier can replace it in sentences following immediately:

- 1) A: nfi ^xnánsŷy ə lêm 'Here are 2 books.
 lêm năj khǝɔŋ khuŋ Which is yours?'
 x
- B: lêm nán kháp 'That one'.
- 2) A: mii ^xnánsŷy máj 'Do you have any books?'
B: mii sǝɔŋ lêm kháp 'I have two.'
 x

The classifier functions like a substitute word here, but it can not occur without either a number before it or a determiner after it.

- c) khṣon 'of' or 'belonging to' is used to indicate 'possession'. It occurs after the thing possessed and before the possessor. Its occurrence in the Noun Phrase is optional when the head noun (thing possessed) is present, thus:

nánsǎy khǎŋ kháw 'his book'

or nánsǎy kháw

'his book'

but the occurrence of khǎw is obligatory when the head noun is not present, thus:

khǎw kháw

'his'

The head noun can be omitted only after it has been identified since khǎw kháw acts as a replacement for the whole Noun Phrase.

- d) khraj like araj (see 2.2a) has the same position in the sentence as the noun it refers to, thus:

Question: kháw pen khraj (lit: he is who)
Who is he?

Answer: kháw pen phŷan phǎm 'He's my friend.'

Question: khun cǎon pen khraj (lit: John is who)
What is John?

Answer: khun cǎon pen khruu phǎm 'John's my teacher.'

When the main verb in the sentence is pen, khraj normally occurs in the predicate. Observe that it may be translated 'what' in some situations.

- e) The verb 'to be' is translated differently according to its subject and complement. Observe the following examples:

<u>Subject</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>Complement</u>	
nǎi	(khyy)	phŷan kháw	'This is his friend.'
khun cǎon	pen	khruu phǎm	'John is my teacher.'
kháw	chŷy	cǎon	'He is (named) John.'

4.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Response Drill

The instructor points at a student as he asks the question and gives the actual name of the student as the cue. He asks every student the question.

Questions: nân/nîi khraj khráp	Who is that/this?
Cue: (actual name of student pointed at)	
Answers: nîi/nân khun (<u>Joe</u>)	This/that is (<u>Joe</u>).
khráp	

b) Response Drill

The instructor gives a cue and points at a student. One student asks and another answers questions like the following:

Instructor: khun thăawoon (pointing at a student)

<u>Student 1</u> : nân/nîi khun thăawoon,	That/this is Mr.
châj māj khráp	Thaworn, isn't it?

<u>Student 2</u> : māj châj khráp	No, it isn't.
--------------------------------------	---------------

<u>Student 1</u> : nân/nîi khraj khráp	Who is that/this?
---	-------------------

<u>Student 2</u> : (nân/nîi) khun ____	(That/this is) ____
---	---------------------

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. khun cim | 4. khun coon |
| 2. khruu | 5. khruu kháw |
| 3. khun mœrîi | 6. khun prasə̀et |

Repeat the drill using actual names of students in the class.

c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>nánsǎy</u> khraj khráp	Whose book (is it)?
naalikaa	<u>naalikaa</u> khraj khráp	Whose watch (is it)?
dinsǎo	<u>dinsǎo</u> khraj khráp	Whose pencil (is it)?
rûup	<u>rûup</u> khraj khráp	Whose picture (is it)?
kâwîi	<u>kâwîi</u> khraj khráp	Whose chair (is it)?
pàakkaa	<u>pàakkaa</u> khráp	Whose pen (is it)?
nánsǎyphim	<u>nánsǎyphim</u> khraj khráp	Whose newspaper (is it)?
burîi	<u>burîi</u> khraj khráp	Whose cigarette (is it)?
nánsǎy	<u>nánsǎy</u> khraj khráp	Whose book (is it)?

d) Response Drill

The instructor points at an object near a student and asks him whose is it. The student's response indicates the actual owner.)

MODEL: Instructor: nân/nîi nánsǎy khraj khráp
'Whose book is that/this?'

Student: khǎoŋ phǎm/khâw/khun cim
'Mine/his/Jim's'

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-----------|
| 1. dinsǎo | 4. pàakkaa | 7. nánsǎy |
| 2. naalikaa | 5. samùt | 8. burîi |
| 3. rûup | 6. nánsǎyphim | 9. kâwîi |

This drill may be repeated one time with students repeating the thing referred to in the answer: nánsǎy khǎoŋ phǎm and one time with students repeating the thing referred to and nân / nîi: nîi nánsǎy phǎm

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Expansion Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Expansion</u>	
1)	khǒɔŋ khraɯ khráp	Whose?
náŋsǎy	náŋsǎy khǒɔŋ khraɯ khráp	Whose book?
nân	nân náŋsǎy khǒɔŋ khraɯ khráp	Whose book is that?
2)	khǒɔŋ khraɯ khráp	Whose?
pàakkaa	pàakkaa khǒɔŋ khraɯ khráp	Whose pen?
nân	nân pàakkaa khǒɔŋ khraɯ khráp	Whose pen is that?
3)	khǒɔŋ khraɯ khráp	Whose?
samùt	samùt khǒɔŋ khraɯ khráp	Whose notebook?
nîi	nîi samùt khǒɔŋ khraɯ khráp	Whose notebook is this?
4)	khǒɔŋ khraɯ khráp	Whose?
dinsǒɔ	dinsǒɔ khǒɔŋ khraɯ khráp	Whose pencil?
nân	nân dinsǒɔ khǒɔŋ khraɯ khráp	Whose pencil is that?

f) Reduction Drill (Change from Pattern 1 to Pattern 2)

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>	
náŋsǎy khǒɔŋ khraɯ	náŋsǎy khraɯ	Whose book?
pàakkaa khǒɔŋ khraɯ	pàakkaa khraɯ	Whose pen?
phŷan khǒɔŋ phǒm	phŷan phǒm	My friend.
kâwîi khǒɔŋ khraɯ	kâwîi khraɯ	Whose chair.
samùt khǒɔŋ nákrĭan	samùt nákrĭan	Student's notebook.
phanrajaa khǒɔŋ khun cǒɔn	phanrajaa khun cǒɔn	Johŋ's wife.
khruu khǒɔŋ raw	khruu raw	Our teacher.
saǎmĭi khǒɔŋ kháw	saǎmĭi kháw	Her husband.

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>	
khon nǎj chýy cɔɔn	khon nán khráp	Which person is named John? That one.
khon nǎj chýy cim	khon nóon khráp	Which person is named Jim? The one over there.
khon nǎj chýy mɛɛrɯi	khon nán khráp	Which person is named Mary? That one.
khon nǎj pen phýankhun	khon nóon khráp	Which person is your friend? The one over there.
khon nǎj pen khruu	khon nán khráp	Which person is the teacher? That one.
khon nǎj pen nákrían	khon nán khráp	Which person is a student? That one.

h) Response Drill (The instructor asks the names of students.)

Instructor: khon nǎj chýy _____ Which person is named
 _____ (actual name) _____?

Student: khon níi/nán
 (pointing to the student): This/that person.

i) Expansion Drill

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1) nǎj | Which? |
| khon nǎj | Which one (person)? |
| nákrían khon nǎj | Which student? |
| nákrían phûuchaaj khon nǎj | Which male student? |
| 2) níi | This |
| khon níi | This one (person). |
| phûujǐn khon níi | This female. |
| nákrían phûujǐn khon níi | This female student. |

- | | | |
|----|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 3) | nóon | That over there. |
| | khon nóon | That one over there. |
| | khruu khon nóon | That teacher over there. |
| | khruu khṣṓṇ khun khon nóon | That teacher of yours over there. |
| 4) | nán | That. |
| | khon nán | That one (person). |
| | phŷan khon nán | That friend. |
| | phŷan khṣṓṇ khun khon nán | That friend of yours. |
| | phŷan phŭujŷŋ khṣṓṇ khun khon nán | That female friend of yours. |

j) Expansion Drill

- | | | |
|----|--|--|
| 1) | khon nǎj chŷy cṓn | Which person is named John? |
| | nákrian nákrian khon nǎj chŷy cṓn | Which student is named John? |
| | phŭuchaaj nákrian phŭuchaaj khon nǎj chŷy cṓn | Which male student is named John? |
| 2) | khon nán chŷy nonjaw | That person is named Nongyaw. |
| | phŷan phṓm phŷan phṓm khon nán chŷy nonjaw | That friend of mine is named Nongyaw. |
| | phŭujŷŋ phŷan phŭujŷŋ phṓm khon nán chŷy nonjaw | That female friend of mine is named Nongyaw. |
| 3) | nǎnsŷy lēm nán dii | That book is good. |
| | khṣṓṇ khun nǎnsŷy khṣṓṇ khun lēm nán dii | That book of yours is good. |

4)	khon nán sǔaj	That one (person) is pretty.
phŷan	phŷan khon nán sǔaj	That friend is pretty.
khǒɔŋ khun	phŷan khǒɔŋ khun khon nán sǔaj	That friend of yours is pretty.
phŷuujǐŋ	phŷan phŷuujǐŋ khǒɔŋ khun khon nán sǔaj	That female friend of yours is pretty.

k) Transformation Drill

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>	
khon nǎj chŷy cīm	khun cīm, khon nǎj	Which one (person) is Jim?
khon nǎj chŷy praphâat	khun praphâat, khon nǎj	Which one is Prabas?
khon nǎj chŷy prasèet	khun prasèet, khon nǎj	Which one is Prasert?
khon nǎj chŷy nútchanan	khun nútchanan, khon nǎj	Which one is Nuchanan?
khon nǎj pen khruu khǒɔŋ khun	khruu khǒɔŋ khun, khon nǎj	Which is your teacher?
khon nǎj pen phanrajaa khun thǎawɔɔn	phanrajaa khun thǎawɔɔn, khon nǎj	Which one is Thaworn's wife?
khon nǎj pen sǎamiī khun mɛɛrīi	sǎamiī khun mɛɛrīi, khon nǎj	Which one is Mary's husband?

THAI BASIC COURSE

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>	
phûujĩn rý phûuchaaj	phûuchaaj khráp	Woman or man? Man.
chÿ cœn rý cim	cim khráp	Is (he) named John or Jim? Jim
khon nán rý khon nóon	khon nóon khráp	That one or the one over there? The one over there.
kháw pen khruu rý nákrían	nákrían khráp	Is he teacher or a student? A student.
dii rý mâj dii	dii khráp	(Is it) good or not? (It's) good.
sǔaj rý mâj sǔaj	mâj sǔaj khráp	(Is she) pretty or not? (She is) not (pretty).
khœn khun rý khœn kháw	khœn kháw khráp	Yours or his? His.

- m) Response Drill (Pairs of students engage in an exchange of the following kind using actual names of other students).

Student 1: kháw chÿ _____ (actual name)

Student 2: khraj khráp, khon níi rý
khon nán (pointing at students)

Student 1: khon níi/nán khráp

n) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
cim	chây cǎon rý cim	(chây) cim khráp
nóon	khon nán rý khon nóon	khon nóon knráp
khruu	pen phyan rý pen khruu	(pen) khruu khráp
khun	khǎon khun rý khǎon phǎm	khǎon khun khráp
sǎaj	phûujǎn khon nán sǎaj rý mâj sǎaj	sǎaj khráp
mâj	chây níi dii rý mâj dii	mâj dii khráp

o) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>		
chây cim	kháw pen khraj	kháw chây cim
pen phyan phǎm	kháw pen khraj	kháw pen phyan phǎm
chây cim, pen phyan phǎm	khon nán pen khraj	kháw chây cim, pen phyan phǎm
chây mǣrǎi, pen phanrajaa khun cǎon	kháw pen khraj	kháw chây mǣrǎi, pen phanrajaa khun cǎon
chây praphâat	kháw pen khraj	kháw chây praphâat
pen khruu phǎm	kháw pen khraj	kháw pen khruu phǎm
chây praphâat, pen khruu phǎm	kháw pen khraj	kháw chây praphâat pen khruu phǎm
chây khun chótchǎoj	khon nán pen khraj	kháw chây chótchǎoj
pen khruu	khon nóon pen khraj	kháw pen khruu
chây cǎon, pen phyan phǎm	khon níi pen khraj	kháw chây cǎon, pen phyan phǎm

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

The instructor points at two or more of the objects as he asks the question and selects one of them as he gives the response.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>	
1) nánsŷy lêm năj dii	lêm nán	Which book is good? That one.
2) pàakkaa dâam năj dii	dâam níi	Which pen is good? This one.
3) dīnsŷŋ thēn năj dii	thēn níi	Which pencil is good? This one.
4) kâwīi tua năj dii	tua nán	Which chair is good? That one.
5) phēnthīi phēen năj dii	phēen níi	Which map is good? This one.

q) Response Drill (Selecting two each of the objects listed below, the instructor asks questions about ownership using the following model):

Instructor: níi nánsŷy sŷŋ lêm, Here are 2 books.
lêm năj khŷŋ khun Which (one) is yours?
Student: lêm níi/nán This one/that one.

- | | | |
|----------|------------|-------------|
| 1) kâwīi | 3) dīnsŷŋ | 5) naalikaa |
| 2) samùt | 4) pàakkaa | |

In the question khun may be replaced by kháw or phŷm / dichán.

r) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	<u>nánsǎy</u> <u>lêm</u> <u>níi</u> <u>dii</u>
samùt	<u>samùt</u> <u>lêm</u> <u>níi</u> <u>dii</u>
pàakkaa	<u>pàakkaa</u> <u>dâam</u> <u>níi</u> <u>dii</u>
dinsǎo	<u>dinsǎo</u> <u>thên</u> <u>níi</u> <u>dii</u>
tó (tua)	<u>tó</u> <u>tua</u> <u>níi</u> <u>dii</u>
phěenthîi	<u>phěenthîi</u> <u>phên</u> <u>níi</u> <u>dii</u>
rûup (baj)	<u>rûup</u> <u>baj</u> <u>níi</u> <u>dii</u>
nákrian	<u>nákrian</u> <u>khon</u> <u>níi</u> <u>dii</u>
khruu	<u>khruu</u> <u>khon</u> <u>níi</u> <u>dii</u>
naalikaa	<u>naalikaa</u> <u>ryan</u> <u>níi</u> <u>dii</u>
nánsǎy	<u>nánsǎy</u> <u>lêm</u> <u>níi</u> <u>dii</u>

s) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	chûaj sòn <u>nánsǎy</u> <u>lêm</u> <u>nán</u> hâj phǎm nòoj, dâj máj khráp
pàakkaa, nóon	chûaj sòn <u>pàakkaa</u> <u>dâam</u> <u>nóon</u> hâj phǎm nòoj, dâj máj khráp
rûup, nán	chûaj sòn <u>rûup</u> <u>baj</u> <u>nán</u> hâj phǎm nòoj, dâj máj khráp
phěenthîi, nán	chûaj sòn <u>phěenthîi</u> <u>phên</u> <u>nán</u> hâj phǎm nòoj, dâj máj khráp
nánsǎy, nóon	chûaj sòn <u>nánsǎy</u> <u>lêm</u> <u>nóon</u> hâj phǎm nòoj, dâj máj khráp

dins๓๐, nán chûaj sòn dins๓๐ thên nán hâj phǎm
nòoj, dâj máj khráp

naalikaa, nán chûaj sòn naalikaa ryan nán hâj phǎm
nòoj, dâj máj khráp

4.3 EXERCISE

- a) One student points at an object and asks who it belongs to. Another student (the actual owner) says that it's his. Continue until ownership has been established for all the objects the students are familiar with.
- b) Find out the names of all the students by asking questions like this: What's the name of that person? A student will respond with the real name.
- c) Find out the names of all the students by asking questions like this: Who is named ____? (using the names of students). The student with the name will respond: I am (named) ____.
- d) One student will point to an object and will ask another student if it's his. He will respond that it is.
- e) Find out if other students think various objects in the room are good or beautiful.
- f) Ask someone to pass you something. He pretends he isn't sure which one you want and asks, 'This one or that one'. You indicate which one and he passes it. You thank him.

4.4 VOCABULARY

baj	classifier for 'picture', etc.
cim	Jim (name)
chótchóoj	Chotchoi (Thai female first name)
chûaj	please
dâam	classifier for 'pen', etc.
dâj	can, could, be able
hâj	for (the benefit of)
khon (khon) ¹	people, also classifier for humans
khǒŋ	of, belonging to
khraj	who, what (in some constructions)
lêm	classifier for 'book'
nonjaw	Nongyaw (Thai female first name)
nákrian (khon)	student, pupil
nán, nân	that (determiner)
nǎj	which (one(s)) (determiner)
nîi, nîi	this (determiner)
nútchanan	Nuchanan (female first name)
nóon, nôon	the one over there (determiner)
pen	to be
phanrajaa, pharijaa, wife (elegant term)	
phanjaa (khon)	
phèn	classifier for 'map, picture, paper' sheet-like
phûuchaa (khon)	man, boy (male human of any age)
phûujǎn (khon)	woman, girl (female human of any age)

¹The unit classifier for each noun is given after the noun.

prasə̀ət	Prasert (male first name)
raw	we, our, us
rúucàk	to know, to be acquainted with, to be familiar with
rǎy, rý, etc.	or
ryan	classifier for 'watch, clock'
sǎamii (khon)	husband (elegant term)
sòŋ	to pass, to hand (someone something)
sǒŋ	two
tua	classifier for 'animals, objects with legs (chairs, tables, etc.)'
thên	classifier for 'pencil', etc.

LESSON FIVE

5.0 BASIC DIALOG: Social Formulae

A:	sawàtdii khráp, khun prichaa	Hello, Pricha.
B:	sawàtdii khráp, khun sǒmsàk	Hello, Somsak.
	pen jaṇṇaj bâaṇ khráp	How are you?
A:	kô rŷaj rŷaj khráp	O.K. (so, so)
B:	ôo, khun prichaa khráp	Oh, Prichaa
	nîi khun cǒon,	This is John.
	nân khun mserîi,	That's Mary.
	phanrajaa khun cǒon	John's wife.
A:	sawàtdii khráp	Hello.
John:	sawàtdii khráp	Hello.
Mary:	sawàtdii khâ	Hello.
(10 minutes later)		
A:	khǒothôot, phǒm paj kǒon na khráp	Excuse me, I must go.
B:	chǎen khráp, phóp kan màj khráp	All right, I'll see you again.

5.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) The particular form used by one Thai when greeting another is dependent on the social status and age of the two participants. Within this framework three groups can be distinguished: (1) Equals, (2) Superiors, and (3) Inferiors. Equals are persons of the same status and greater age. Inferiors are persons of lower status, or of equal status and lesser age. Within these social groups there are formal and informal types of discourse.

Observe the following examples:

1. GREETINGS

a) Between Equals

i) Formal

A: sawàtdii khráp

B: sawàtdii khráp

(The exchange may continue as in 1.0)

ii) Informal (especially between intimates)

A: (sa) wàt dii khráp

B: (sa) wàt dii khráp

or A: pen (jaŋ) ɲaj bâaŋ khráp How are you?

B: kô rŷaj rŷaj So so.

or B: jêɛ Terrible.

or A: paj năj khráp Where are you going?

B: paj { thîaw khráp Out for pleasure.
 { thurá Out for business.

or A: paj năj maa khráp Where are you coming from?

B: paj { thîaw maa khráp From pleasure.
 { thurá From business.

b) Inferior or Superior

i) Formal

Inferior: sawàtdii khráp (accompanied by a wai (wâj). See 1.1)

Superior: (sawàtdii) (sometimes only wais in return.)

NOTE: The height of the hands when waiing is in inverse ratio to the age and social position of the participants.

or Inferior: thân sabaajdii ๕๕ khráp

Superior: sabaajdii, khòopcaj

ii) There is no informal greeting from inferior to superior.

c) Superior to Inferior

i) Informal

Superior: pen (jaŋ) ɲaj bâan

Inferior: sabaajdii khráp

ii) There is no formal greeting from superior to inferior.

NOTE: A greeting between superior and inferior may be no more than an exchange of wais with the inferior waiing first.

2 INTRODUCTIONS

a) Between Equals

A: khun sǒmsàk khráp
nîi khun prichaa

sǒmsàk: sawàtdii khráp

prichaa: sawàtdii khráp

b) Between Inferiors and Superiors

(An inferior is always introduced to a superior)

A: khun (name of inferior) khráp
nǎi thân _____ (rank, position)
khun _____ (name)

Inferior: sawàtdii khráp (accompanied by a wai)

NOTE: jindii thǎi dǎj rúucàk 'glad to know (you)' is added after sawàtdii in many social groups. Among equals a woman is introduced to a man. The woman usually wais before the greeting. If one woman is introduced to another, the wai is not necessary but is considered as polite.

3. LEAVETAKING (at all levels)

A: khǎothôot, phǎm paj kòn 'Excuse me, I
na khráp must go.'

B: chǎen khráp, phóp kan 'All right, I'll
màj khráp see you again.'

4. INVITATION

chǎen khráp is used as an invitation to a person.

- a) to take some action which is beneficial to himself (eat food, come in, sit down, etc.)
- or b) to do something the person has already indicated he wants to do (take leave, etc.).

Special Note to the Student:

- a) Social status and age are very important in Thailand. Most Thais are very conscious of the social status and age of the people they meet, and act accordingly. The American who has been assigned to work in Thailand may

not be aware of his social position. Depending on his age and the position he holds in the government agency his status will vary from high to very high; consequently, he should use the forms designated as 'between equals' for most of the Thais he meets in his work and reserve the 'inferior to superior' forms for greeting higher ranking officials. With taxi drivers and servants he might choose to use the 'superior to interior' forms. If he should meet the King of Thailand or a Buddhist priest, none of the forms given would be correct.

b) The following are some common titles and forms of address:

- 1) thân It replaces khun when speaking to a superior.
thân + Title (position): thân thûut 'Mr. Ambassador'
- 2) mǎo: (khun) + mǎo + Name 'Doctor X' (M.D)
- 3) dóktêe: dóktêe + Name 'Doctor Y' (Ph.D.)
- 4) aacaan: aacaan + Name 'Mr./Mrs.' (College teacher)
- 5) khruu: khruu + Name 'Mr./Mrs.' (teacher)

5.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) There are several ways to indicate negation in Thai.¹ The choice of ways is determined by (1) the form class (noun, verb, etc.) of the thing to be negated and (2) the kind of negative meaning to be expressed.

1. mâj 'not, the contrary, etc.' is used to negate all types of verbs (stative, modals, motion, etc.)

<u>aakaat mâj rón</u>	'The weather isn't hot.'
<u>phǒm mâj mii naalikaa</u>	'I don't have a watch.'

2. mâj dâj 'not, not as assumed to be' is used to negate verbs of motion, action verbs, and pen and chây. It is used often in past situations and in present situations that are contrary to expectations.

¹See Noss, 138-143 for a fuller treatment.

phỏm mắj đắj pít faj 'I didn't turn off the lights.'
kháw mắj đắj chỷy sỏmsắk 'He's not named Somsak.'

3. mắj chắj 'not a case of' is used most frequently to negate Noun Phrases as complements in Equational sentences (sentences without verbs).

nắi mắj chắj đinsỏỏ kháw 'This isn't his pencil'.
naalikaa ryan nắi mắj chắj 'This watch isn't yours.'
khỏỏn khun.

In sentences with pen as the connective verb (kháw pen nắkrian, etc.) either of two types of negation may occur according to the situation.

As an initial statement:

kháw mắj đắj pen nắkrian 'He isn't a student.'

As a response to a question:

kháw pen khruu (kháw) mắj 'He's the teacher. He
chắj nắkrian isn't a student.'

- b) pen jan nạj 'How is/are...?' can be used with subject like aakaat, etc.

aakaat pen jan nạj 'How's the weather?'

(kaan) rian phaasắa thắj pen jan nạj 'How is studying Thai?'

5.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Response Drill

Have pairs of students practice the following exchange (with accompanying wai when appropriate):

1. A: pen (jan) nạj bắan khráp
B: { kỏ rắa rắa
jắe

2. A: paj nǎj khráp
B: paj { thǎw khráp
 { thurá
3. A: paj nǎj maa khráp
B: paj { thǎw maa khráp
 { thurá

b. Response Drill

Have sets of 3 students participate in the following exchanges (with wai when appropriate):

1. A: khun (name of student)
nǎi khun (name of student)

Student 1: sawàtdii khráp
Student 2: sawàtdii khráp
2. A: khun (name of a student)
nǎi khun (name of student)

Student 1: sawàtdii khráp
jǐndii thǎi dǎj rúucàk (khun)

Student 2: sawàtdii khráp
jǐndii thǎi dǎj rúucàk (khun)

3. Have one student take the part of Foreign Minister, Thanat Khoman.

A: khun (name of student)
 nîi khun thanàt khooman¹

Student: sawàtdîi khráp

c) Response Drill

Have pairs of students practice the following exchange:

A: khǎothôot, phǎm paj kòon nakhráp

B: chǎen khráp, phóp kan màj khráp

d) Substitution Transformation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
prasèet	kháw chýy prichaa	kháw mâj dâj chýy <u>prasèet</u>
còon	kháw chýy cim	kháw mâj dâj chýy <u>còon</u>
praphâat	kháw chýy wíchaj	kháw mâj dâj chýy <u>praphâat</u>
kaandaa	kháw chýy waanii	kháw mâj dâj chýy <u>kaandaa</u>

¹nîi thân rátthamontriî krasuan
 tàan prathêet

'Mr. Foreign Minister',,

or nîi thân rátthamontriî krasuan
 tàan prathêet, khun thanàt
 khooman

'Mr. Foreign Minister,
 Mr. Thanat Khoman'
 might be used.

e) Substitution Transformation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
kháw	khun malíkaa pen khruu phǒm	khun malíkaa mǎj dǎj pen khruu <u>kháw</u>
khun	khun nonlák pen phŷan kháw	<u>khun</u> nonlák mǎj dǎj pen phŷan <u>khun</u>
khun coon	mǝerfŷi pen phanrajaá khun cim	mǝerfŷi mǎj dǎj pen phanrajaá <u>khun</u> <u>coon</u>

f) Substitution Transformation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
nāataaŋ	nān pratuu	nān mǎj chǎj <u>nāataaŋ</u>
dinsǎo	nŷi pàakkaa	nŷi mǎj chǎj <u>dinsǎo</u>
wát	nōon roonrian	nōon mǎj chǎj <u>wát</u>
tó	nān kǎwŷi	nān mǎj chǎj <u>tó</u>
samùt	nŷi náŋsŷy	nŷi mǎj chǎj <u>samùt</u>
rūup wát	nān rūup roonrian	nān mǎj chǎj <u>rūup wát</u>

NOTE: Point at the objects referred to in this drill.

5.4 EXERCISES

a) Have the students discuss various objects in the room in terms of:

1. What they are and what they are not,
2. What they are called,
3. Which ones are good, or beautiful.
4. Who has them, and
5. Who they belong to.

b) Have the students discuss various people in the classroom in terms of:

1. Their names,
2. Whether they are teachers, wives, or friends, and if so, of whom,
3. Whether they (the students) are good, pretty, hot, or cold,
4. Whether they are feeling well, terrible, or so so,
5. Whether one particular student is acquainted with another particular one,
6. If anyone in the room is named sǒmcìt, ubon, reenuu, or malíkkaa, and
7. If there is anything else interesting about the people in the room (including the instructor) that the students know how to ask about.

c) Using students act out the following social situations:

1. Greetings

- a) A student Mr. Brown greets a Thai friend of his from the Foreign Ministry, Mr. Praphaat.
- b) A Thai Minister, Mr. Arun, is greeted by one of the people in his ministry.
- c) A servant greets his boss, Mr. Jones.
- d) Two Thai women friend, Mrs. Aarii and Mrs. Amphoon, meet and greet each other.
- e) Two Thai men, Mr. Somchit and Mr. Pridaa, greet each other. One says he feels terrible.

2. Introductions

- a) A friend introduces two men (Mr. Prasæt and Mr. Somsak) who work in the same office.
- b) Someone introduces a lady, Mrs. Wilaj to Mr. Prasit, a high ranking officer in the Ministry of Interior.
- c) Mrs. Nonglak is introduced to Mr. Wichaj. Both are teachers in the same school.

3. Leavetaking

One student says he wants to leave; another agrees.

4. Invitations

- a) One student knocks at the door; another invites him to come in.
- b) A lady and a gentleman are standing at the open door of the elevator. He invites her to get on.
- c) You have invited a friend to dinner. After you have sat down, you invite him to eat.

5.5 VOCABULARY

aacaan (khon)	college or university teacher
aarii	Aree (male or female first name)
amphoon	Amphorn (male or female first name)
ôo	Oh!
ubon	Ubon (female first name)
bâaŋ	some, any (pronominal)
chæen	please, go ahead and...
dóktêe (khon)	doctor (Ph.D.)
jaŋraŋ, jaŋŋaŋ, ɲaŋ	how (question word)
jindii	(to be) glad
jêe	(to be) terrible, to be in a bad way
kan	together (particle indicating mutuality or reciprocity)
kaandaa	Kanda (female first name)
kô	connective particle; not to be translated in <u>kô rŷaŋ rŷaŋ</u> .
kôn	before, first
krasuaŋ (krasuaŋ)	ministry (division of the government)
khòpcaŋ	thank you (superior to inferior)

maa	to come
maalíkaa	Malika (female first name)
màj	again, new
mâj dâj	not, not as assumed to be
m໋໋ (khon)	medical doctor
nonlák	Nonglak (female first name)
naj	variant form of <u>janraj</u>
paj	to go
paj... maa	to come from
paj k໋໋n	to go first, to go ahead
prathêet (prathêet)	country, nation
phóp	to meet, run into (someone)
phóp... kan	to meet or see each other
rátthamontrii	minister (head of a ministry)
reenuu	Renu (male or female first name)
râyaj râyaj	so so (as a response to a greeting)
s໋mcít	Somchit (male or female first name)
s໋msàk	Somsak (male first name)
tàan	(to be) different, separate
tàan prathêet	foreign
thanàt khooman	Mr. Thanat Khoman, Foreign Minister of Thailand
thân	you, he, she (for persons of superior status)
thîi	that, which (connective)
thurá	business, affairs, errands
paj thurá	to go out on business
thîaw	for pleasure
paj thîaw	to go out for pleasure
waanii	Wanee (female first name)
wíchaj	Wichai (male first name)

LESSON SIX

6.0 BASIC DIALOG: Mr. Smith meets a Thai in the provinces.

(Part I)

A:	sawàtdii khráp	Hello.
B:	khun phûut phaasăa thaj kèn can pen khon châat araj khráp	You speak Thai very well. What nationality are you?
A:	phôm pen khon ameerikan khráp	I'm an American.
B:	khun phûut phaasăa thaj dâj dii mâak khráp	You (can) speak Thai very well.
A:	khòopkhun khráp phôm phûut dâj nít nòoj thâwnán khráp	Thank you. I can only speak a little.
B:	khraj sôn phaasăa thaj khun khráp	Who taught you Thai?
A:	khun nonnúut khráp kháw pen khruu phaasăa thaj thîi roonrian sôn phaasăa	Miss Nongnut. She is a Thai language teacher at the language school.

6.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) can 'extremely, a great deal, very much' is used as an intensifier for stative verbs like kèn, dii, sǔaj, etc. It is used in making comments primarily. It never occurs in questions.
- b) kèn means 'to be skillful, adept, expert (at something)'. It occurs after Verb Phrases (rian nǎnsǔy, etc.) or before Noun Phrases (phaasǎa thaɰ, etc.).

1. kháw rian nán'sŷy kèn (He learns with facility)
'He's a good student.'

2. kháw lén dontrií máj kèn 'He plays (music) poorly.'
 3. khruu kháw kèn phaasáa juan 'His teacher is good in Vietnamese.'
- c) The verbs rian 'study, learn', khían 'write', àan 'read', and sǒn 'to teach' do not occur without object complements; if there is no other complement, nánsǔy is used, thus rian nánsǔy 'to study (in a school)', khían nánsǔy 'to write (books)', àan nánsǔy 'to read', and sǒn nánsǔy 'to teach'.
- d) The Thais use the following terms to refer to people of various nationalities:
1. For all nationalities: khon + Name of Country

<u>khon thaj</u>	'a Thai'
<u>khon jǐipùn</u>	'a Japanese'
<u>khon phaamâa</u>	'a Burmese'
<u>khon jǣeraman</u>	'a German'
<u>khon íijǐp</u>	'an Egyptian' etc.
 2. For people from Malaya, Indonesia, India, and the Middle East only: khèek + Name of Country.

<u>khèek malajuu</u>	'a Malayan'
<u>khèek íijǐp</u>	'an Egyptian'
<u>khèek india</u>	'an Indian', etc.
 3. The terms khèek and faràn are used alone to refer to certain large groups of people.
 - a) faràn refers to white-skinned people, including Europeans, Australians, and white Americans.

Q: <u>kháw pen faràn,</u> <u>châj máj</u>	'He's a 'farang', isn't he?'
A: <u>châj khráp, kháw</u> <u>pen khon sapeen</u>	'That's right. He's Spanish.'

- b) khèɛk refers to people from Malaya, Indonesia, India, Ceylon, and the Middle East. (Normally dark-skinned people).

kháw pen khèɛk, maa càak 'He's a khèɛk.' 'He
prathêet india comes from India.'

4. The Moslem people living in South Thailand are referred to as thaj itsalaam 'Thai Moslem'.

- e) myan + (name of city) or name of city alone is used in colloquial language to refer to cities, thus myan wóochintân (or) wóochintân 'Washington'. In the mass media krun + (name of city) is used to refer to some capitol cities, thus krun room 'Rome', krun parít 'Paris', etc.

- f) myan + (name of country) or name of country alone is frequently used in spoken Thai to refer to a country instead of prathêet + (name of country) which is more formal and is used in newspapers, speeches, etc.

kháw maa càak jîipùn 'He comes from Japan'.

kháw maa càak myan jîipùn 'He comes from Japan'.

kháw maa càak prathêet jîipùn 'He comes from Japan'.

- g) As was indicated in 4.1, khraj usually occurs in the complement position after pen (kháw pen khraj, etc.); in some situations khraj precedes pen. Observe the following two examples:

1. 'Juliet' pen khraj 'Who's Juliet?' (I never heard of her.)

2. khraj pen 'Juliet' 'Who's Juliet?' (Who is playing the part of Juliet in the play by Shakespeare.)

When the main verb in the sentence is khyy 'to be', if the subject of the sentence is a pronoun, khraj is in the complement position.

kháw khyy khraj

'Who is he?'

With noun subjects khraj may precede or follow khyy optionally:

khun nonnúť khyy khraj

'Who is Nongnut?'

or khraj khyy khun nonnúť

With verbs besides pen and khyy, khraj may occupy the subject or complement position:

khraj sǒn phaasǎa thaj

'Who teaches Thai?'

khun praphâat sǒn

'Who is Prapas teaching

phaasǎa thaj hâj khraj

Thai to?'

6.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (<u>khon</u>) <u>thaj</u> | He's a Thai. |
| 2. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (<u>khon</u>) <u>ameerikan</u> | He's an American. |
| 3. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (<u>khon</u>) <u>an̄krít</u> | He's an Englishman. |
| 4. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (<u>khon</u>) <u>farànsèet</u> | He's a Frenchman. |
| 5. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (<u>khon</u>) <u>jæraman</u> | He's a German. |
| 6. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (<u>khon</u>) <u>ciin</u> | He's a Chinese. |
| 7. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (<u>khon</u>) <u>jǐipùn</u> | He's a Japanese. |
| 8. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (<u>khon</u>) <u>laaw</u> | He's a Lao. |
| 9. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (<u>khon</u>) <u>juan</u> | He's a Vietnamese. |
| 10. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (<u>khon</u>) <u>phamâa</u> | He's a Burmese. |
| 11. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (<u>khon</u>) <u>khamǎen</u> | He's a Cambodian. |
| 12. <u>kháw</u> <u>pen</u> (<u>khon</u>) <u>kawlǐi</u> | He's a Korean. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	<u>kháw</u> pen khon thaj
khun	<u>khun</u> pen khon thaj
khon ankrít	khun pen <u>khon ankrít</u>
khon ameerikan	khun pen <u>khon ameerikan</u>
kháw	<u>kháw</u> pen khon ameerikan
khun cōon	<u>khun cōon</u> pen khon ameerikan
phŷan phǒm	<u>phŷan phǒm</u> pen khon ameerikan
khon ciin	phŷan phǒm pen <u>khon ciin</u>
kháw	<u>kháw</u> pen khon ciin
khon phamâa	kháw pen <u>khon phamâa</u>
khun	<u>khun</u> pen khon phamâa
thaj	khun pen khon <u>thaj</u>

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw pen khon châat araj What nationality is he?	kháw pen khon thaj He's a Thai.
2. kháw pen khon châat araj What nationality is he?	kháw pen juan He's a Vietnamese.
3. kháw pen khon châat araj What nationality is he?	kháw pen khon ameerikan He's American.
4. kháw pen khon châat araj What nationality is he?	kháw pen khon phamâa He's Burmese.
5. kháw pen khon châat araj What nationality is he?	kháw pen ciin He's Chinese.

THAI BASIC COURSE

d) Transformation Drill (Change to the negative in two ways.)

<u>Affirmative Pattern</u>	<u>Negative 1-Pattern</u>	<u>Negative 2-Pattern</u>
kháw pen khon jîipùn	kháw mâj châj khon jîipùn	kháw mâj dâj pen khon jîipùn
kháw pen laaw	kháw mâj châj laaw	kháw mâj dâj pen laaw
kháw pen khon aṅkrìt	kháw mâj châj khon aṅkrìt	kháw mâj dâj pen khon aṅkrìt
kháw pen juan	kháw mâj châj juan	kháw mâj dâj pen juan

e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
ciin	kháw pen khon thaj, châj máj	mâj châj kháw pen khon ciin mâj châj khon thaj
	He's Thai, isn't he?	No, he isn't. He's Chinese. He isn't Thai.
laaw	kháw pen khon thaj, châj máj	mâj châj, kháw pen khon laaw mâj châj khon thaj
	He's Thai, isn't he?	No, he isn't. He's Lao. He isn't Thai.

laaw	knun pen khon thaj rýplàaw	plàaw (or) phǒm pen khon laaw mâj châj khon thaj
	Are you Thai?	No, I'm <u>not</u> . / I'm not. I'm Lao. I'm not a Thai.
phonlaryan	khun pen thahǎan lǎ	{ plàaw mâj châj phǒm pen phonlaryan mâj châj thahǎan
	You're a soldier?	No, I am <u>not</u> . No, I'm not. I'm a civilian. I'm not a soldier.
câwnâathîi sathǎanthûut	khun pen câwnâathîi juusít lǎ	{ mâj châj plàaw phǒm pen câwnâathîi sathǎanthûut mâj châj câwnâathîi juusít
	You are a USIS official?	No, I'm not. No, I am not. I'm an Embassy official. I'm not a USIS official.

khon	khun pen khon krunthêep	{mâj châj
tàan canwàt	châj máj	{plàaw
		phǒm pen khon
		tàan canwàt
		mâj châj khon
		krunthêep
	You are a Bangkokker, aren't you?	No, I'm not. No, I am not. I'm an out-of-towner. I'm not a Bangkokker.
phân	kháw pen phanrajaa khun coon lǎ	mâj châj kháw pen phân mâj châj phanrajaa
	She's John's wife?	No, she isn't. She's a friend. She's not his wife.

f) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>thaj</u>	He's from Thailand.
ameerikaa	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>ameerikaa</u>	He's from America.
farànsèet	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>farànsèet</u>	He's from France.
wíatnaam	kháw maa càak (prathêet) <u>wíatnaam</u>	He's from Vietnam.

phamâa	kháw maa càak (prathêet)	He's from Burma.
	<u>phamâa</u>	
rátsia	kháw maa càak (prathêet)	He's from Russia.
	<u>rátsia</u>	
ciin	kháw maa càak (prathêet)	He's from China.
	<u>ciin</u>	
khaměen	kháw maa càak (prathêet)	He's from Cambodia.
	<u>khaměen</u>	
malajuu	kháw maa càak (prathêet)	He's from Malaya.
	<u>malajuu</u>	
filíppin	kháw maa càak (prathêet)	He's from the Philippines.
	<u>filíppin</u>	

g) Transformation Drill

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
kháw pen khon thaj	kháw maa càak (prathêet) thaj
kháw pen khon aṅkrìt	kháw maa càak (prathêet) aṅkrìt
kháw pen juan	kháw maa càak (prathêet) wîatnaam
kháw pen khon rátsia	kháw maa càak (prathêet) rátsia
kháw pen jîipùn	kháw maa càak (prathêet) jîipùn
kháw pen khèesk india	kháw maa càak (prathêet) india

h) Substitution Drill

Have two students do the following exchange substituting the cue words for those underlined.

Student 1: kháw pen juan, châj máj khráp

Student 2: máj châj, pen khon thaj khráp

Student 1: maa càak prathêet thaj rý khráp

Student 2: khráp

1. jæraman, farànsèet

4. rátsia, sapeen

2. laaw, kawlyi

5. ankrít, ameerika(a)(n)

3. jfípùn, ciin

i) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
krunthêep	khun maa càak myan araj What city do you come from?	phôm maa càak <u>krun room</u> Bangkok.
woochintân	khun maa càak myan araj What city do you come from?	phôm maa càak <u>woochintân</u> Washington.
njuu jóok	khun maa càak myan araj What city do you come from?	phôm maa càak <u>njuu jóok</u> New York.
krun room	khun maa càak myan araj What city do you come from?	phôm maa càak <u>krun room</u> Rome.
krun loondon	khun maa càak myan araj What city do you come from?	phôm maa càak <u>krun loondon</u> London.

THAI BASIC COURSE

lɔɔndɔn	khun maa càak myaŋ araj	phǒm maa càak <u>lɔɔndɔn</u>
	What city do you come from?	London.
denwêə	khun maa càak myaŋ araj	phǒm maa càak <u>denwêə</u>
	What city do you come from?	Denver.
saan fransisko	khun maa càak myaŋ araj	phǒm maa càak <u>saan fransisko</u>
	What city do you come from?	San Francisco.

j) Substitution Transformation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
ankrìt, ameerikaa	kháw maa càak <u>ankrìt</u>	kháw mâj dâj maa càak <u>ameerikaa</u>
lɔɔndɔn, njuu jóok	kháw maa càak <u>lɔɔndɔn</u>	kháw mâj dâj maa càak <u>njuu jóok</u>
parîit, tookiaw	kháw maa càak (krun) <u>parîit</u>	kháw mâj dâj maa càak (krun) <u>tookiaw</u>
wɔɔchɪŋtân, denwêə	kháw maa càak <u>wɔɔchɪŋtân</u>	kháw mâj dâj maa càak <u>denwêə</u>
farànsèet, jæraman	kháw maa càak <u>farànsèet</u>	kháw mâj dâj maa càak <u>jæraman</u>

k) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak
parîit | He's a 'farang'.
He comes from Paris. |
| 2. kháw pen khèek, maa càak
malajuu | He's a 'khèek'.
He comes from Malaya. |
| 3. kháw pen khon thaj, maa càak
myaŋ thaj | He's a Thai.
He comes from Thailand. |
| 4. kháw pen khèek, maa càak
prathêet india | He's a 'khèek'.
He comes from India. |
| 5. kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak
prathêet aŋkrît | He's 'farang'.
He comes from England. |
| 6. kháw pen khon ciin, maa càak
hônkon | He's Chinese.
He comes from Hong Kong. |
| 7. kháw pen khon thaj ìtsalaam,
maa càak pàttani | He's a Thai Moslem.
He comes from Pattani. |
| 8. kháw pen faràŋ, maa càak
woochiŋtân | He's a 'farang'.
He comes from Washington. |

l) Substitution Drill

Substitute the cue words in one of the exchanges below
(only one will fit the cue word):

MODEL I: (for khèek) Cue word: khon malajuu

A: phÿan khun pen faràŋ, châj máj

B: mâj châj, pen khèek

A: maa càak prathêet năj

B: maa càak (prathêet) malajuu

THAI BASIC COURSE

MODEL II: (for others) Cue word: khon farànsèet (or) thaj

A: phŷan khun pen faràn, chāj māj

B: chāj khráp, pen khon farànsèet
māj chāj khráp, pen khon thaj

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 1. jŷipùn | 6. khamĕen |
| 2. india | 7. sapeen |
| 3. rátsia | 8. malajuu |
| 4. ameerikan | 9. phamâa |
| 5. indooniisia | 10. laaw |

m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1. khonthaj phŷut phaasăa thaj | Thais speak Thai. |
| 2. khon ameerikan phŷut phaasăa aŋkrít | Americans speak English. |
| 3. khon aŋkrít phŷut phaasăa aŋkrít | Englishmen speak English. |
| 4. khon ciin phŷut phaasăa ciin | Chinese speak Chinese. |
| 5. khon laaw phŷut phaasăa laaw | Lao speak Laotian. |
| 6. khĕek malajuu phŷut phaasăa malajuu | Malayans speak Malay. |
| 7. khon juan phŷut phaasăa juan. | Vietnamese speak Vietnamese. |
| 8. khon óosatreeelia phŷut phaasăa aŋkrít | Australians speak English. |

n) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
rátsia	khon rátsia phŷut phaasăa <u>rátsia</u>
kawlŷi	khon kawlwŷi phŷut phaasăa <u>kawlŷi</u>
jŷipùn	khon jŷipùn phŷut phaasăa <u>jŷipùn</u>
khamĕen	khon khamĕen phŷut phaasăa <u>khamĕen</u>
phamâa	khon phamâa phŷut phaasăa <u>phamâa</u>

THAI BASIC COURSE

o) Substitution Drill

Have two students engage in the following exchange, substituting the cue words below for those underlined:

Cue: phamâa, ciin

Student 1: thfi phamâa, khâw phûut phaasăa ciin, châj mǎj

Student 2: mǎj châj, khâw phûut phaasăa phamâa
khâw mǎj dâj phûut phaasăa ciin.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. farànsèet, jǽraman | 7. hōonkon, wīatnaam |
| 2. indooniisia, jīipùn | 8. thaj, malajuu |
| 3. sapeen, italīan | 9. njuu jóok, kawlyi |
| 4. myan̄thaj, thaj | 10. rát míchíkēen, thaj |
| 5. ameerikaa, an̄krìt | 11. bóssatān, rátsia |
| 6. khamēen, laaw | 12. rát indianāa, an̄krìt |

p) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
thaj	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>thaj</u> dâj	He can speak Thai.
laaw	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>laaw</u> dâj	He can speak Lao.
jǽraman	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>jǽraman</u> dâj	He can speak German.
sapeen	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>sapeen</u> dâj	He can speak Spanish.
rátsia	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>rátsia</u> dâj	He can speak Russian.
ciin	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>ciin</u> dâj	He can speak Chinese.
juan	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>juan</u> dâj	He can speak Vietnamese.
malajuu	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>malajuu</u> dâj	He can speak Malayan.
phamâa	khâw phûut phaasăa <u>phamâa</u> dâj	He can speak Burmese.

THAI BASIC COURSE

q) Substitution Drill

Ask the students what languages they can speak, using the following patterns:

Instructor: khun phûut phaasăa (_____) dâj mǎj khráp
Can you speak _____?

Student: dâj khráp	Yes, I can.
mâj dâj khráp	No, I can't.

r) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	nákrian khon níi kèn phaasăa thaj mǎj	Is that student good in Thai?
khun coon	khun <u>coon</u> kèn phaasăa thaj mǎj	Is John good in Thai?
ankrít	khun coon kèn phaasăa <u>ankrít</u> mǎj	Is John good in English?
prichaa	khun <u>prichaa</u> kèn phaasăa ankrít mǎj	Is Prichaa good in English?
farànsèet	khun prichaa kèn phaasăa <u>farànsèet</u> mǎj	Is Prichaa good in French?
khruu kháw	khruu <u>kháw</u> kèn phaasăa farànsèet mǎj	Is his teacher good in French?
laaw	khruu kháw kèn phaasăa <u>laaw</u> mǎj	Is his teacher good in Lao?

THAI BASIC COURSE

s) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	nákrian khon nán rian nánssyy kèn	That student learns rapidly.
kháw	<u>kháw</u> rian nánssyy kèn	He learns rapidly.
khǎan nánssyy thaj	kháw <u>khǎan</u> <u>nánssyy</u> <u>thaj</u> kèn	He writes Thai well.
khun	<u>khun</u> khǎan nánssyy thaj kèn	You write Thai well.
phûut phaasăa juan	khun <u>phûut</u> <u>phaasăa</u> <u>juan</u> kèn	You speak Vietnamese well.
khruu phǒm	<u>khruu</u> <u>phǒm</u> phûut phaasăa juan kèn	My teacher speaks Vietnamese well.
sǒon nánssyy	khruu phǒm <u>sǒon</u> <u>nánssyy</u> kèn	My teacher teaches well.

6.3 EXERCISES

- Using a weekly news magazine or daily newspaper have one student find out from another what the nationality of various people is.¹
- Have one student find out from another what languages are spoken in Asia. (Use map on page 85.)
- Have students find out what languages other students speak and how well.
- Have students find out what city and state other students come from.

¹To the instructor: Have the students ask the questions in as many different ways as possible.

6.4 COMPREHENSION TEST

The teacher reads each of the passages below two times at normal speed with a pause between the two readings. The students listen and take notes if they wish. Then the teacher asks them the questions below. The students are not to look at the book during this time.

- A. phǒm mii phŷan. kháw pen khèek, maa càak malajuu.
kháw phûut phaasǎa malajuu dâj.
1. phŷan phǒm phûut phaasǎa malajuu dâj máj
 2. kháw pen faràn, châj máj khráp
 3. kháw maa càak prathêet nǎj
- B. khruu phǒm kèn phaasǎa phaamâa. kháw pen khon ameerikan
phanrajaa kháw thamnaan thîi juusít
1. phanrajaa khǒon khruu phǒm mâj dâj thamnaan rý khráp
 2. khruu phǒm phûut phaasǎa phaamâa dâj máj
 3. khruu pen faràn, châj máj
- C. thahǎan maa càak prathêet jæraman. kháw pen khon
jæraman phanrajaa kháw pen khruu phaasǎa thaj.
1. thahǎan mii phanrajaa rý khráp
 2. khruu phaasǎa thaj pen khon jæraman, châj máj
 3. thahǎan pen khèek, châj máj
- D. kháw pen khèek, maa càak prathêet india. kháw pen mǒo,
thamnaan thîi roonphajabaan culaa. kháw chŷy waanii.
1. khun mǒo chŷy araj
 2. kháw thamnaan rýplàaw
 3. kháw thamnaan thîinǎj

4. kháw pen khèek, châj máj
 5. kháw maa càak prathêet malajuu, châj máj
 6. khun waanii pen araj thîi roonphajabaaan culaa
- E. nákrían pen khèek indonísia. kháw rian phaasǎa juan.
kháw rian kèn mâak. phanrajaa kháw pen faràn, maa càak
parít. khun mǐe kháw maa càak krun jaakaatǎa
1. nákrían rian phaasǎa araj
 2. kháw rian kèn máj
 3. phanrajaa kháw mâj dǎj pen khèek rýkhráp
 4. khun mǐe maa càak nǎj
 5. nákrían kèn phaasǎa juan máj
 6. nákrían pen faràn, châj máj
 7. thîi krun jaakaatǎa kháw phûut phaasǎa cín, châj
máj khráp
- F. phýan phǒm kèn phaasǎa kawlíi. kháw pen faràn, maa càak
prathêet italíi. kháw thamnaan thîi krun room. kháw pen
thahǎan
1. phýan khun pen mǔo châj máj khráp
 2. kháw kèn phaasǎa araj
 3. kháw pen khon cháat araj
 4. kháw maa càak prathêet nǎj
 5. kháw pen khèek, châj máj
 6. kháw thamnaan rýplàaw
 7. kháw thamnaan thîinǎj

G. nîi rûup phanrajaa phǒm. rûup nîi sǔaj mâak. kháw pen khon
ciin, maa càak hǒnkon. kháw mâj dâj thamnaan, pen
mêebâan

1. nîi rûup phanrajaa phǒm, châj máj
2. phanrajaa phǒm pen khon châat araj
3. kháw pen khruu thîinǎj
4. rûup phanrajaa phǒm sǔaj máj
5. phanrajaa phǒm thamnaan rýplàaw

6.5 VOCABULARY

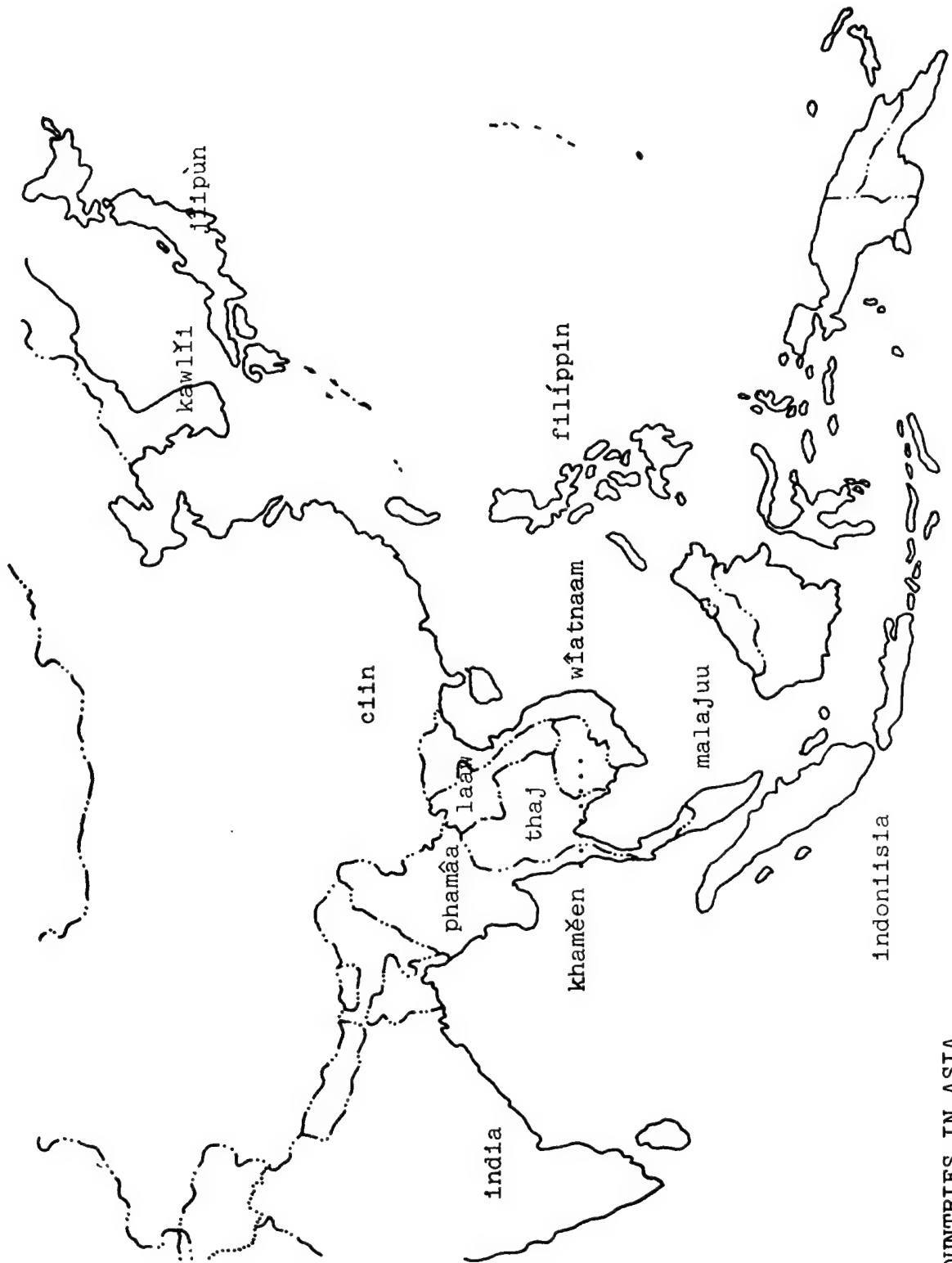
ameerikaa	America
ameerikan	American
ankrít	England, English
india	India, Indian
indoniisia	Indonesia, Indonesian
indianâa	Indiana
italîan	Italian (italîi 'Italy')
ósatreelia	Australia, Australian
bóssatân	Boston
càak	from
can	extremely, a great deal

THAI BASIC COURSE

châat (châat)	nationality, nation, race
ciin	China, Chinese
denwêə	Denver
faràn (khon)	white-skinned people, including Europeans, Australians, white Americans, etc.
farànsèet	France, French
filíppin	Philippines, Philippine
hōŋkon	Hong Kong
jæeraman	Germany, German
jîipùn	Japan, Japanese
juan	Vietnam, Vietnamese
kawlŷi	Korea, Korean
kèŋ	to be expert, skillful (at doing something)
khamŷen	Cambodia, Cambodian
khèek (khon)	dark-skinned people, Moslems and Hindus in particular
khŷan	to write
krun (krun)	city (used to refer to some capitol cities)
krunthêep	Bangkok
laaw	Laos, Lao, Laotian
loondoŋ	London

THAI BASIC COURSE

mâak	very much, a lot of
malajuu	Malaya
míchíkɛɛn	Michigan
myaŋ (myaŋ)	city, country (nation)
nít nòoj	a little
njuu jóok	New York
paríit	Paris
pattani	Pattini (city in South Thailand)
phaasǎa (phaasǎa)	language, speech
phamâa	Burma, Burmese
rát (rát)	state, nation
rian	to study, learn
room	Rome
sapeen	Spain
saan fransisko	San Francisco
sǎon	to teach
thaj	Thai
thâwnán	only, only that (much)
tooklaw	Tokyo
wíatnaam	Vietnam, Vietnamese



COUNTRIES IN ASIA

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON SEVEN

7.0 BASIC DIALOG: Mr. Smith meets a Thai in the Provinces

(Part II)

- | | |
|---|--|
| A: paj nǎj khráp | Where are you going? |
| B: paj talàat khráp | To the market. |
| A: khun phûut phaasǎa thaj kèn
caṇ pen khon châat araj | You speak Thai very well.
What is your nationality? |
| B: phǒm pen khon ameerikan khráp
khǒothôot, khun phûut phaasǎa
aṇkrít pen máj khráp | I'm an American.
Excuse me, do you speak
English? |
| A: mâj pen khráp | No, I don't. |
| B: khun pen chaaw caṇwát níi
rýplàaw khráp | Are you a native of this
changwat? |
| A: plàaw khráp, phǒm maa càak
caṇwát lampaan
khun khəəj paj máj khráp | No, I'm from Lampang
changwat.
Have you ever been there? |
| B: mâj khəəj khráp
juù thîi nǎj khráp | No, I haven't.
Where is it? |
| A: jùu naj phâak nǎa | In the North. |

7.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) a caṇwát is an administrative unit in the Thai government. It may be translated 'province'. There are 71 in Thailand.
- b) chaaw means 'resident' or 'native'.

- c) Observe the difference in meaning between kèn 'good' (in the sense of skillful) and dii 'good' (in general).

kháw pen khon dii 'He's a good (or nice) person.'

kháw rian nánsŷy kèn 'He's a good student (studies well).'

- d) paj nǎj is frequently used as a casual greeting.

7.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) khəej + Verb Phrase is used to refer to experience in the past.

kháw khəej pen khruu 'He used to be a teacher.'

khun khəej paj myanthaŋ máj 'Have you ever been to Thailand?'

The affirmative response to khəej + Verb Phrase + máj questions is khəej; the negative response is máj khəej.

- b) paj 'to go' and maa 'to come' may be followed by place expressions (roonrian, etc.) or by Verb Phrases indicating an activity (syy khǎon 'buy things', etc.). Either the place expression or Verb Phrase may be replaced by nǎj in questions, thus

Q: paj nǎj 'Where are you going? (or) 'What are you going (someplace) to do?'

A: paj roonrian '(I'm) going to school.'

(or) paj syy khǎon '(I'm) going shopping.'

- c) Since the verb in Thai does not have changes in form to correlate with changes in time (tense changes), a sentence like phǎm paj roonrian might be interpreted as 'I'm going to school', 'I go to school', or 'I went to school'. This does not usually result in ambiguity, however, since the context the utterance occurs in usually makes it clear which interpretation is intended.

- d) The pronoun subject may be omitted anytime its omission does not result in misunderstanding. Observe these examples:

B: paj năj 'Where are (you) going?'

A: paj talàat kháp '(I'm) going to the market.'

The pronoun is sometimes omitted in statements; it is frequently omitted in questions, and is almost always omitted in responses to questions.

- e) The sentence + dâj construction is used to indicate that something is 'possible, suitable, all right', thus

phǒm phûut phaasăa thaj dâj 'I can speak Thai.'

khun phûut phaasăa thaj dâj máj 'Can you speak Thai?'

Affirmative response: dâj kháp 'Yes, I can.'

Negative response: mâj dâj kháp 'No, I can't.'

Since dâj is considered to be the main verb in constructions of this type, the negative mâj is placed just before it in negative statements, thus:

kháw paj talàat mâj dâj 'She is unable to go to the market.'

The subject of the sentence is the sentence kháw paj talàat.

- f) The Sentence + pen construction is used to indicate that 'someone knows how to perform some activity', thus:

Statement: phǒm khàp rót pen 'I know how to drive a car.'

Negative statement:

kháw lên dontri mâj pen 'He doesn't know how to play a musical instrument.'

Question: khun lên dontri thaj pen máj 'Can you play a Thai music?'

Negative response: *mâj pen khráp* 'No, I can't.'

g) In situations where ability to do something is a matter of having learned the technique of doing it, either pen or dâj may be used interchangeably, thus:

In situations in which inability to do something results not from a lack of technique or skill but for other reasons, only dâj and not pen can be used.

h) Both khəəj 'used to' and dəj or pen can occur in the same sentence, thus:

khun khəej phūt phaasaa ciin 'Were you formerly able
pen māj to speak Chinese?'

89

THAI BASIC COURSE

7.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
1. ráanaahǎan	paj <u>ráanaahǎan</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the restaurant.
2. roonrian	paj <u>roonrian</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the school.
3. thǐithamṇaan	paj <u>thǐithamṇaan</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the office.
4. talàat	paj <u>talàat</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the market.
5. roonphajabaan	paj <u>roonphajabaan</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the hospital.
6. thanakhaan	paj <u>thanakhaan</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the bank.
7. bâan	klàp <u>bâan</u> khráp	(I'm) going home.
8. prajsanii	paj <u>prajsanii</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the Post Office.
9. ráankhǎajkhǒṇ	paj <u>ráankhǎajkhǒṇ</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the shops.
10. roonreem eerawan	paj <u>roonreem eerawan</u> khráp	(I'm) going to the Erawan Hotel.

b) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
roonrian	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>roonrian</u> khráp To school.
thǐithamṇaan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>thǐithamṇaan</u> khráp To the office.
ráanaahǎan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>ráanaahǎan</u> khráp To the restaurant?

prajsanii	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>prajsanii</u> khráp To the Post Office.
ráankhǎajkhǒŋ	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>ráankhǎajkhǒŋ</u> khráp To the shops.
thanaakhaan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>thanaakhaan</u> khráp To the bank.
talàat	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>talàat</u> khráp To the market.
bāan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	klàp <u>bāan</u> khráp Home.

c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	phǒm paj thamŋaan khráp	I went ¹ to work.
rian nǎnsǎy	phǒm paj <u>rian nǎnsǎy</u> khráp	I went to school.
kháw	<u>kháw</u> paj rian nǎnsǎy khráp	He went to school.
thǎaw	kháw paj <u>thǎaw</u> khráp	He went out (for fun).
sýy khǒŋ	kháw paj <u>sýy khǒŋ</u> khráp	He went shopping.
kin kaafɛɛ	kháw paj <u>kin kaafɛɛ</u> khráp	He went to drink coffee.
kin khāaw	kháw paj <u>kin khāaw</u> khráp	He went to eat.
sòŋ còtmǎaj	kháw paj <u>sòŋ còtmǎaj</u> khráp	He went to mail a letter.
phǒm	<u>phǒm</u> paj sòŋ còtmǎaj khráp	I went to mail off a letter.
hǎa mǒɔ	phǒm paj <u>hǎa mǒɔ</u> khráp	I went to see a doctor.
thoorasàp	phǒm paj <u>thoorasàp</u> khráp	I went to telephone.
thamŋaan	phǒm paj <u>thamŋaan</u> khráp	I went to work.

¹paj could be translated as 'go, is/are going, or went'.

d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
thamṇaan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>thamṇaan</u> khráp To work.
roonṇrian	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>roonṇrian</u> khráp To school.
rian nǎnṣṣy	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>rian nǎnṣṣy</u> khráp To study.
sýy khṣon thīi ráan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>sýy khṣon thīi ráan</u> khráp To buy something at a shop.
sòn còtmǎaj	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>sòn còtmǎaj</u> khráp To mail a letter.
thoorasàp	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>thoorasàp</u> khráp To telephone.
thamṇaan	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>thamṇaan</u> khráp To work.
kin kaafṣṣ thīi ráan thíp thóp	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>kin kaafṣṣ thīi ráan</u> <u>thíp thóp</u> To drink cofee at the Tip Top shop.
kin khâaw thīi raamâa	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>kin khâaw thīi raamâa</u> To eat at the Rama.
hǎa mṣo thīi sǎathoon	paj nǎj khráp Where are you going?	paj <u>hǎa mṣo thīi sǎathoon</u> To see a doctor on Sathorn (street).

thġaw	paj năj khráp	paj <u>thġaw</u>
	Where are you going?	Out (for pleasure).
thġaw talàatnát	paj năj khráp	paj <u>thġaw talàatnát</u>
	Where are you going?	Out to the market (special one day market) for fun.
thurá thġi	paj năj khráp	paj <u>thurá thġi sathăan</u>
sathăanthġut		<u>thġut</u>
	Where are you going?	To the embassy on business.

e) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. chianmàj	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>chianmàj</u> He comes from Chiangmai Province.
2. ùttaradġt	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>ùttaradġt</u> He comes from Uttaradit Province.
3. phġtsanulôok	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>phġtsanulôok</u> . He comes from Pitsanuloke Province.
4. udoon	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>udoon</u> . He comes from Udorn Province.
5. khġon kġen	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>khġon kġen</u> . He comes from Khonkaen Province.
6. nakhoon râatchasġmaa	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>nakhoon râatchasġmaa</u> He comes from Korat Province.
7. lópburġi	kháw maa càak caŋwàt <u>lópburġi</u> . He comes from Lopburi Province.

THAI BASIC COURSE

8. ajútthajaa kháw maa càak caŋwàt ajútthajaa.
He comes from Ayuthaya Province.
9. krunthêep kháw maa càak krunthêep.¹
He comes from Bangkok.
10. raâtburii kháw maa càak caŋwàt raâtburii.
He comes from Ratburi Province.
11. nakhoon sǐi kháw maa càak caŋwàt nakhoon sǐi thammarâat.
thammarâat He comes from Nakorn Sri Thammarat Province.
12. phétburii kháw maa càak caŋwàt phétburii.
He comes from Phetburi Province.
13. sǒŋkhlǎa kháw maa càak caŋwàt sǒŋkhlǎa.
He comes from Songkla Province.
14. jalaa kháw maa càak caŋwàt jalaa.
He comes from Yala Province.
15. ubon kháw maa càak caŋwàt ubon.

f) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. jalaa	kháw pen chaaw <u>jalaa</u> . He's a native of Yala.
2. sǒŋkhlǎa	kháw pen chaaw <u>sǒŋkhlǎa</u> . He's a native of Songkla.
3. nakhoon sǐi thammarâat	kháw pen chaaw <u>nakhoon sǐi thammarâat</u> . He's a native of Nakorn Sri Thammarat.

¹By government division it is called caŋwàt phránakhoon.

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 4. phétburii | kháw pen chaaw <u>phétburii</u> .
He's a native of Phetburi. |
| 5. râatburii | kháw pen chaaw <u>râatburii</u> .
He's a native of Ratburi. |
| 6. krunthêep | kháw pen chaaw <u>krunthêep</u> .
He's a native of Bangkok. |
| 7. ajútthajaa | kháw pen chaaw <u>ajútthajaa</u> .
He's a native of Ayuthaya. |
| 8. lópburi | kháw pen chaaw <u>lópburi</u> .
He's a native of Lopburi. |
| 9. khoorâat | kháw pen chaaw <u>khoorâat</u> .
He's a native of Khorat. |
| 10. ubon | kháw pen chaaw <u>ubon</u> .
He's a native of Ubol. |
| 11. khŏn kĕn | kháw pen chaaw <u>khŏn kĕn</u> .
He's a native of Khonkaen. |
| 12. udŏn | kháw pen chaaw <u>udŏn</u> .
He's a native of Udorn. |
| 13. phítsanulôok | kháw pen chaaw <u>phítsanulôok</u> .
He's a native of Pitsanuloke. |
| 14. uttaradît | kháw pen chaaw <u>uttaradît</u> .
He's a native of Uttaradit. |
| 15. chianmàj | kháw pen chaaw <u>chianmàj</u> .
He's a native of Chiangmai. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

g) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
klaan	lópburì jùu naj phâak araj What part (of Thailand) is Lopburi in?	jùu naj phâak <u>klaan</u> It's in the Central part.
nŷa	chianmàj jùu naj phâak araj What part is Chiangmai in?	jùu naj phâak <u>nŷa</u> It's in the Northern part.
isăan	udoon jùu naj phâak araj What part is Udorn in?	jùu naj phâak <u>isăan</u> It's in the N.E. part.
nŷa	uttaradît jùu naj phâak araj What part is Uttaradit in?	jùu naj phâak <u>nŷa</u> It's in the Northern part.
isăan	khŏnkèen jùu naj phâak araj What part is Konkaen in?	jùu naj phâak <u>isăan</u> It's in the N.E. part.
klaan	phétburì jùu naj phâak araj What part is Petburi in?	jùu naj phâak <u>klaan</u> It's in the Central part.
tâj	sŏnkhlăa jùu naj phâak araj What part is Songkla in?	jùu naj pàk <u>tâj</u> It's in the Southern part.
isăan	khoorâat jùu naj phâak araj What part is Korat in?	jùu naj phâak <u>isăan</u> It's in the N.E. part.
tâj	jalaa jùu naj phâak araj What part is Yala in?	jùu naj pàk <u>tâj</u> It's in the Southern part.
isăan	ubon jùu naj phâak araj What part is Ubol in?	jùu naj phâak <u>isăan</u> It's in the N.E. part.

h) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. kháw maa càak caŋwàt chianmàj.
He comes from Chiangmai
Province.
2. kháw maa càak caŋwàt jalaa.
He comes from Yala
Province.
3. kháw maa càak caŋwàt lópburi.
He comes from Lopburi
Province.
4. kháw maa càak caŋwàt ajútthajaa.
He comes from Ayuthaya
Province.
5. kháw maa càak caŋwàt ùttaradit.
He comes from Uttaradit
Province.
6. kháw maa càak caŋwàt phítsanulôok
He comes from Pitsanuloke
Province.
7. kháw maa càak krunthêep
He comes from Bangkok.
8. kháw maa càak tàan-caŋwàt
He's from the provinces.

Pattern 2

- kháw pen khon chianmàj.
He's a native of Chiangmai
Province.
- kháw pen khon jalaa.
He's a native of Yala
Province.
- kháw pen khon lópburi.
He's a native of
Lopburi Province.
- kháw pen khon ajútthajaa.
He's a native of Ayuthaya
Province.
- kháw pen khon ùttaradit
He's a native of Uttaradit
Province.
- kháw pen khon phítsanulôok
He's a native of
Pitsanuloke Province.
- kháw pen khon krunthêep
He's a 'Bangkoker'.
- kháw pen khon tàan-caŋwàt
He's a 'out-of-towner.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

1) Response Drill

Teacher: jalaa

Yala.

Student 1: kháw maa càak caṇwàt
jalaa.

He comes from Yala
Province.

Student 2: kháw pen khon jalaa
rǎ khráp

He's a native of
Yala, is he?

Student 1: khráp

Yes (he is).

Continue the drill by substituting the following names
for Yala:

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. ubon | 9. ùttaradìt |
| 2. udoon | 10. phítsanulôok |
| 3. lópburií | 11. khǒnkhèen |
| 4. ajútthajaa | 12. nakhoon sǐi thammarâat |
| 5. chianmàj | 13. nakhoon râat chasǐmaa |
| 6. râatburií | 14. phránakhoon / krunthêep |
| 7. phétburií | 15. jalaa |
| 8. sǒnkhǐlǎa | |

j) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

kháw pen khon lópburií.
kháw pen khon jalaa.
kháw pen khon sǒnkhǐlǎa
kháw pen khon phítsanulôok
kháw pen khon khǒnkhèen
kháw pen khon krunthêep
kháw pen khon tàaṇcaṇwàt

Pattern 2

kháw pen chaaw lópburií.
kháw pen chaaw jalaa.
kháw pen chaaw sǒnkhǐlǎa
kháw pen chaaw phítsanulôok
kháw pen chaaw khǒnkhèen
kháw pen chaaw krunthêep
kháw pen chaaw tàaṇcaṇwàt

k) Response Drill

Teacher: kháw pen khon canwàt What province is he
 araj udoon native of? Udon.

Student: kháw pen khon / chaaw He's a native of
 udoon Udon (Province).

Continue the drill by substituting the following names for Udon:

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| 1. jalaa | 9. khoorâat |
| 2. sŏnkhlăa | 10. ubon |
| 3. nakhoon sŏi thammarât | 11. phŏtsanulôok |
| 4. phétburii | 12. uttaradît |
| 5. râatburii | 13. chianmâj |
| 6. krunthêep | 14. udon |
| 7. ajútthajaa | 15. lópburi |
| 8. lópburi | |

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. kháw maa càak phâak nŏa. | He comes from the North. |
| 2. kháw maa càak phâak isăan | He comes from the Northeast
(of Thailand) |
| 3. kháw maa càak phâak klaan | He comes from the Central part. |
| 4. kháw maa càak pàk tâj | He comes from the South (of
Thailand). |

NOTE: isăan refers only to the Northeastern part of Thailand. It is not the usual word for Northeast. Likewise pàk rather than phâak is used to refer to the Southern part of Thailand.

m) Substitution Drill

Teacher: kháw maa càak phâak klaan He comes from the
 Central part.
 : isǎan Northeast.

Student: kháw maa càak phâak isǎan He comes from the
Northeast.

Continue the drill by substituting the following items after phâak:

- | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. nĩa | 4. klaan | 8. klaan |
| 2. tăt | 5. isăan | 9. tăt |
| 3. isăan | 6. tăt | 10. klaan |
| | 7. nĩa | |

n) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

- | | | | |
|----|-------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. | nĩa | kháw maa càak phâak <u>nĩa</u> . | kháw pen khon phâak <u>nĩa</u> . |
| | | He comes from the North. | He's a Northerner. |
| 2. | isǎan | kháw maa càak phâak <u>isǎan</u> . | kháw pen khon phâak <u>isǎan</u> . |
| | | He comes from the
Northeast. | He's a 'Northeasterner'. |
| 3. | tâj | kháw maa càak pàk <u>tâj</u> . | kháw pen khon pàk <u>tâj</u> . |
| | | He comes from the South. | He's a Southerner. |
| 4. | klaan | kháw maa càak phâak <u>klaan</u> | kháw pen khon phâak <u>klaan</u> |
| | | He comes from the
Central part. | He's a native of the
Central part. |

o) Substitution Drill

Teacher: tâj

South

Student 1: kháw maa càak pàk tâj

He comes from the South.

Student 2: kháw pen khon pàk tâj rǎy

Is he a Southerner?

Student 1: khráp

Yes, he is.

Continue the drill by substituting the following items for tâj:

- | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. klaan | 4. tâj | 8. tâj |
| 2. nǎa | 5. nǎa | 9. nǎa |
| 3. isǎan | 6. isǎan | 10. isǎan |
| | 7. klaan | |

p) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

1. nǎa kháw pen khon phâak nǎa.

He's a Northerner.

kháw pen chaaw nǎa.

He's a Northerner.

2. isǎan kháw pen khon phâak isǎan

He's a Northeasterner.

kháw pen chaaw isǎan

He's a Northeasterner.

3. tâj kháw pen khon pàk tâj.

He's a Southerner.

kháw pen chaaw tâj.

He's a Southerner.

4. klaan kháw pen khon phâak klaan

He's a native of the Central part.

kháw pen chaaw phâak klaan

He's a Central Thai resident.

q) Response Drill

Teacher: tâj

South.

Student 1: khun maa càak phâak năj

What part do you
come from?

Student 2: pàk tâj

From the South.

Student 1: ô, khun pen chaaw pàk
tâj rěkháp

Oh, you're a
Southerner?

Student 2: khráp

Yes, I am.

Continue the drill by substituting the following words
for tâj:

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|--------|----------|
| 1. năa | 3. klaan | 5. năa | 7. isăan |
| 2. isăan | 4. tâj | 6. tăt | 8. năa |

r) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. khon phâak klaan phûut phaasăa
krunthêep | People from Central Thailand
speak Bangkok Thai. |
| 2. khon pàk tâj phûut phaasăa
pàk tâj | Southerners speak Southern
Thai. |
| 3. khon phâak isăan phûut phaasăa
(phâak) isăan | Northeasterners speak
Northeastern Thai. |
| 4. khon phâak năa phûut phaasăa
(phâak) năa | Northerners speak Northern
Thai |

s) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

	khun khəəj <u>paj myan̄thaj</u> máj Have you ever been to Thailand?
rúucàk kháw	khun khəəj <u>rúucàk kháw</u> máj Have you ever met him?
paj chian̄màj	khun khəəj <u>paj chian̄màj</u> máj Have you ever been to Chiangmai?
rian phaasǎa farànsèet	khun khəəj <u>rian phaasǎa farànsèet</u> máj. Have you ever studied French?
jùu tàn̄prathêet	khun khəəj <u>jùu tàn̄prathêet</u> máj Have you ever lived abroad?
tham̄naan kàp kháw	khun khəəj <u>tham̄naan kàp kháw</u> máj Have you ever worked with him?
pen khruu	khun khəəj <u>pen khruu</u> máj Were you ever a teacher?
lên dontriì pen	khun khəəj <u>lên dontriì</u> pen máj Did you used to be able to play music?

t) Response Drill (Answers based on facts)

MODEL:	<u>Teacher:</u>	khun khəəj paj myan̄thaj máj	Have you ever been to Thailand?
	<u>Student:</u>	mâj khəəj khráp khəəj khráp	No, I haven't. Yes, I have.

1. khun khəəj thaàn aahǎan thaj máj	Have you ever eaten Thai food?
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------

- | | |
|--|--|
| 2. khun khəej rúucàk diin ras(k) máj | Have you ever met Dean Rusk? |
| 3. khun khəej paj thǎaw júróop máj | Have you ever been to Europe? |
| 4. khun khəej paj thamnaan kàp khun
(name of a student) máj | Have you ever worked with
_____? |
| 5. khun khəej phûut phaasǎa thaj
kàp khon thaj máj | Have you ever talked Thai
with a Thai? |
| 6. khun khəej phûut phaasǎa ciin
dâj. máj | Did you used to be able to
speak Chinese? |

u) Combination Drill (Combine these sentences with dâj.)

1. khǎw phûut phaasǎa thaj
2. phanrajaa khǎw paj thǎaw
3. phûujǐn khon nán tênram
4. thahǎan khon nán wâajnáam
5. nákrían khon níi àan nǎnsǎy thaj
6. khèek malajuu phûut phaasǎa thaj
7. khruu farànsèet khon nán phûut phaasǎa jèeraman
8. khun prasèet lèn dontrií
9. khun prapâat paj lèn kóof
10. faràn khon nán lèn dontrií thaj

v) Combination Drill (Combine the sentences in drill s
with mâj dâj.)

w) Response Drill (Give an affirmative response to each
questions.)

- | <u>Question</u> | <u>Response</u> |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. khǎw phûut phaasǎa jǐipùn dâj máj
Can he speak Japanese? | dâj khráp
Yes, he can. |

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 2. phanrajaa kháw paj thġaw dġj mġj
Can his wife go out for pleasure? | dġj khráp
Yes, she can. |
| 3. khun pġet nġatġn dġj mġj
Can you open the window? | dġj khráp
Yes, I can. |
| 4. nġkrian khon nġn duu nġnsġy dġj mġj
Is that student able to look at
the book (or do homework)? | dġj khráp
Yes, he is. |
| 5. khon ciġn phġut phaasġa ciġn dġj mġj
Can Chinese people speak Chinese? | dġj khráp
Yes, they can. |
| 6. chġaj sġn dġnsġo hġj phġm dġj mġj
Can you hand me the pencil, please? | dġj khráp
Yes, I can |
| 7. khruu phġan khun sġn phaasġa ankrġt dġj mġj
Can your friend's teacher teach English? | dġj khráp
Yes, she can. |
| 8. kháw paj sġy khġn dġj mġj
Can she go shopping? | dġj khráp
Yes, she can. |
| 9. khun jġu tġanprathġet dġj mġj
Can you live abroad? | dġj khráp
Yes, I can. |
| 10. kháw rian phaasġa phamġa dġj mġj
Is he able to study Burmese? | dġj khráp
Yes, he is. |

x) Response Drill. (Give negative responses to the questions in drill u.)

y) Combination Drill (Combine the following sentences with pen.)

1. kháw khàp rót
2. phǒm lên dontri1
3. phanrajaaw kháw tham kàpkhâaw
4. kháw khǎan phaasǎa ciin
5. khun thǎawoon phim nánsǎy
6. phûuchǎawchaan khon nán lên tennít
7. nákrían khon nán phûut phaasǎa tàanprathêet
8. phýan khun kêe rót
9. khruu kháw sǎon nánsǎy
10. phǒm phûut phaasǎa rátsia

z) Combination Drill (Combine the sentences in drill w with mâj pen.)

aa) Response Drill

Respond to the following questions affirmatively or negatively as the situation indicates using pen or mâj pen.

1. khun tham kàpkhâaw pen máj
2. khèek india phûut phaasǎa juan pen máj
3. nákrían thǎinǎi wâaj náam pen máj
4. khon juan phûut phaasǎa phamâa pen máj
5. khruu khun sǎon nánsǎy pen máj
6. khun lên dontri1 pen máj
7. phýan khon thaj khǎon khun kêe rót pen máj
8. faràn khon nán phûut phaasǎa thaj pen máj
9. sǎami khun mǎerǎi sýy aahǎan pen máj
10. phýan khun khàp rya pen máj

ab) Situation Response Drill

Listen to the description of the situation and to the cue words, then one student forms a question with pen or dâj and another answers it. Both the question and the answer should fit the situation.

<u>Situation</u>	<u>Cue words</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw mâj sabaaj He's ill.	khàp rôt drive (a car)	kháw khàp rôt dâj máj Can he drive?	mâj dâj khráp No, he can't.
2. kháw mâj khœaj lên dontri1 He's never played music	lên dontri1 play music	kháw lên dontri1 pen máj Can he play music?	mâj pen No, he can't.
3. khun malícan tham kàpkhâaw thúk wan Malichanh cooks everyday.	tham kàpkhâaw cook	kháw tham kàpkhâaw pen máj Can she cook?	pen khráp Yes, she can.
4. kháw pen khon farànsèet He's French.	phûut phaasăa farànsèet speak French	kháw phûut phaasăa farànsèet dâj máj Can he speak French?	dâj khráp Yes, he can.

5. kháw pen phôokháa khǎaj khǒŋ kháw khǎaj pen khráp
khǒŋ pen máj
He's a merchant. sell things Can he sell things? Yes, he can.
6. kháw mâj khǎej khǎan phaasǎa kháw khǎan mâj dǎj khráp
rian phaasǎa thaj phaasǎa thaj
thaj dǎj máj
He has never write Thai Can he write Thai? No, he can't.
studied Thai.
7. kháw pen thahǎan wǎaj náam kháw wǎaj náam pen khráp
rya pen máj
He's a sailor. swim Can he swim? Yes, he can.
8. kháw khǎej pen phûut phaasǎa kháw phûut dǎj khráp
khruu phaasǎa ciin phaasǎa ciin
ciin dǎj máj
He used to be a speak Can he speak Chinese? Yes, he can.
Chinese teacher.
9. phǎan khǒŋ phǒm khàprót kháw khàp rót mâj pen khráp
mâj khǎej khàp pen máj
rót lǎej
My friend has drive a car Can he drive a car? No, he can't.
never driven a car at all.
10. saamǎi khun sýy kàpkhâaw kháw sýy pen khráp
nonkhraan paj kàpkhâaw
talàat thúk wan pen máj
Nongkran's buy food Does he know how to shop for food? Yes, he does.
husband goes to the market everyday.

7.4 EXERCISES

a) Find out what section and province different instructors come from.

b) Find out which students in the class know how to:

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. drive a car | 5. dance |
| 2. cook | 6. type |
| 3. play tennis | 7. play music |
| 4. swim | 8. repair a car |

Find out if they do the above things well.

c) Ask a student if he is able to:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. close the classroom door | 4. turn off the lights |
| 2. open the window | 5. open the door |
| 3. open his book | 6. close his notebook |

If he says he is able to do so, ask him to do it.

If he says he is unable to do so, tell him not to do it.

d) Find out if different student in the class have ever:

1. been to various countries
2. lived in different provinces in Thailand
3. been to different cities and countries on pleasure trips
4. lived in various cities and states in the U.S.

e) Give each student in the class an index card, on which he is to write 6 items of information taken from the following categories:

I. Name: self, wife, relations, teacher, friend, etc.

II. Occupation

III. Location of occupation: place, city, country, part of country, etc.

- IV. Nationality: country, state, province, etc.
- V. Language speaking ability: native, others, dialects of languages
- VI. Travel experience: Travel or residence, for pleasure or business
- VII. Skills: driving a car, playing tennis, playing music, etc.

The students take turns asking questions so as to find out what has been written on the card. All students take notes.

As soon as the information on a card has been discovered, another student is quizzed about the information on his card. Continue this until all cards have been examined.

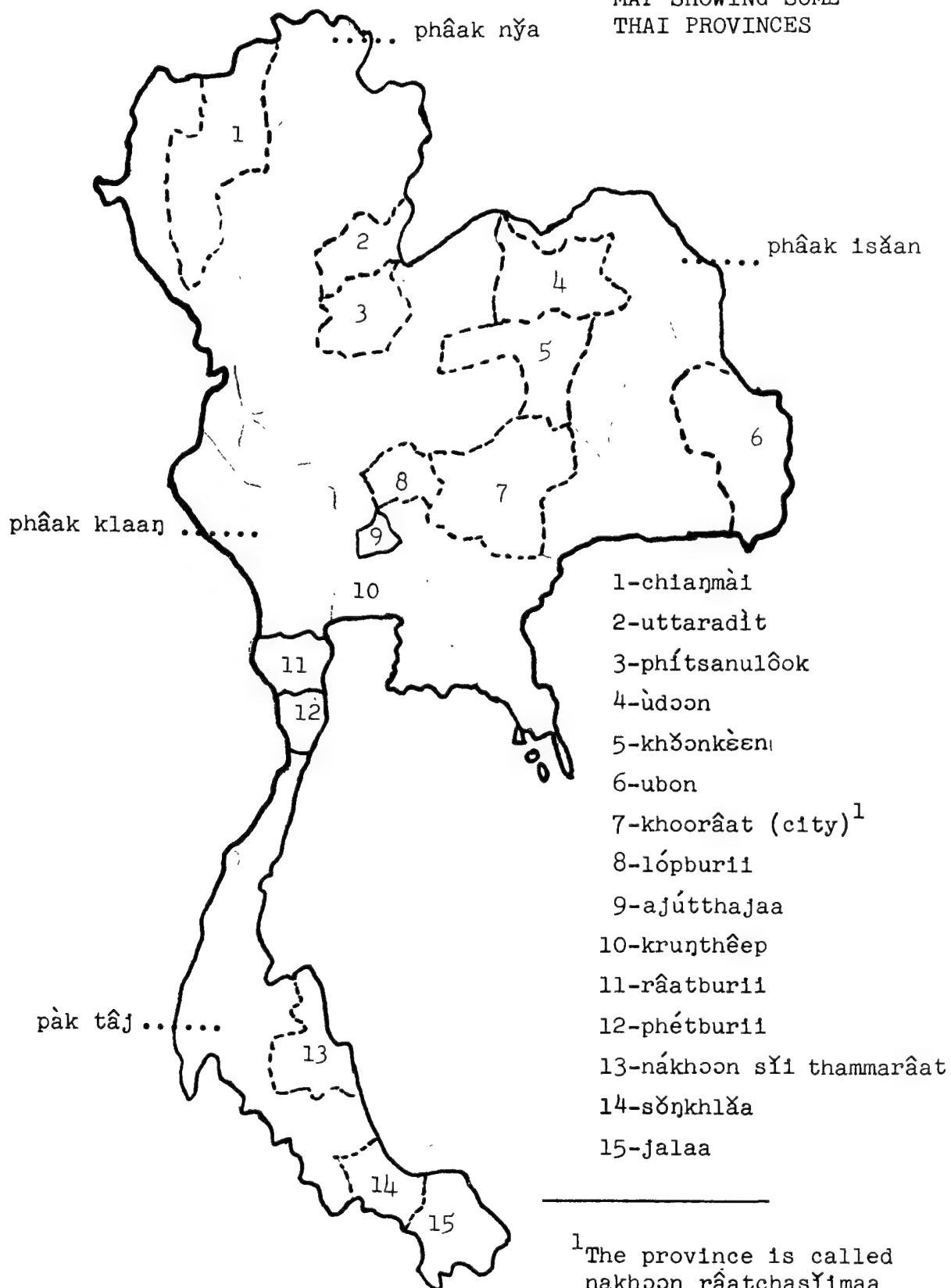
7.5 VOCABULARY

ajútthajaa	Ayuthaya (city in Central Thailand)
eerawan	Erawan (name of hotel)
isǎan	northeast (in Thailand)
ubon	Ubon (city in Northeast Thailand)
udoon	Udorn (city in Northeast Thailand)
ùttaradìt	Uttaradit (city in North Thailand)
bâan (lǎn)	house, home
caṇwàt	province
chaaw (khon)	resident, native
chianmǎj	Chiangmai (city in North Thailand)
còtmǎaj (chabàp)	letter (to mail)
dīin ras(k)	Dean Rusk
dontrii	music
hǎa	(to go) to see, visit, to look for, seek
jalaa	Yala (city in South Thailand)

jùu	to live, stay; to be located at
júròop	Europe
kaafɛɛ	coffee
kàp, ka-	with
kàpkhâaw	food, something to eat with rice
kêɛ	to fix, correct (something)
khâaw	rice
khàp rôt	to drive a car
khəəj	to have ever (done something) used to (be something, etc.)
khɔ̀nkɛ̀ɛn	Khonkaen (city in Northeastern Thailand)
khɔ̀ɔn	thing, object, of, belonging to
kin	to eat or drink something (common usage)
klaan	central, middle, neutral
klàp... (paj/maa)	to go back (return), to come back
lên	to play (games, music, etc.)
lópburii	Lopburi (city in Central Thailand)
mɔ̀ɔ (khon)	doctor (medical)
nakhoon rāatchasimaa	Korat (Nakorn ratchasima) (city in Northeastern Thailand)
nakhoonsīi thammarāat	Nakorn Sri Thammarat (city in Southern Thailand)
nǎa	north, above
pàk	part (with <u>pàk tāj</u> 'Southern Part' only)
phâak (phâak)	part, region, section
phétburii	Phetburi (city in Central Thailand)
phim (diit)	to typewrite
phítsanulôok	Pitsanuloke (city in Northern Thailand)
phránakoon	Bangkok (official name of the province the city of Bangkok is located in)
prajsanii	the post office

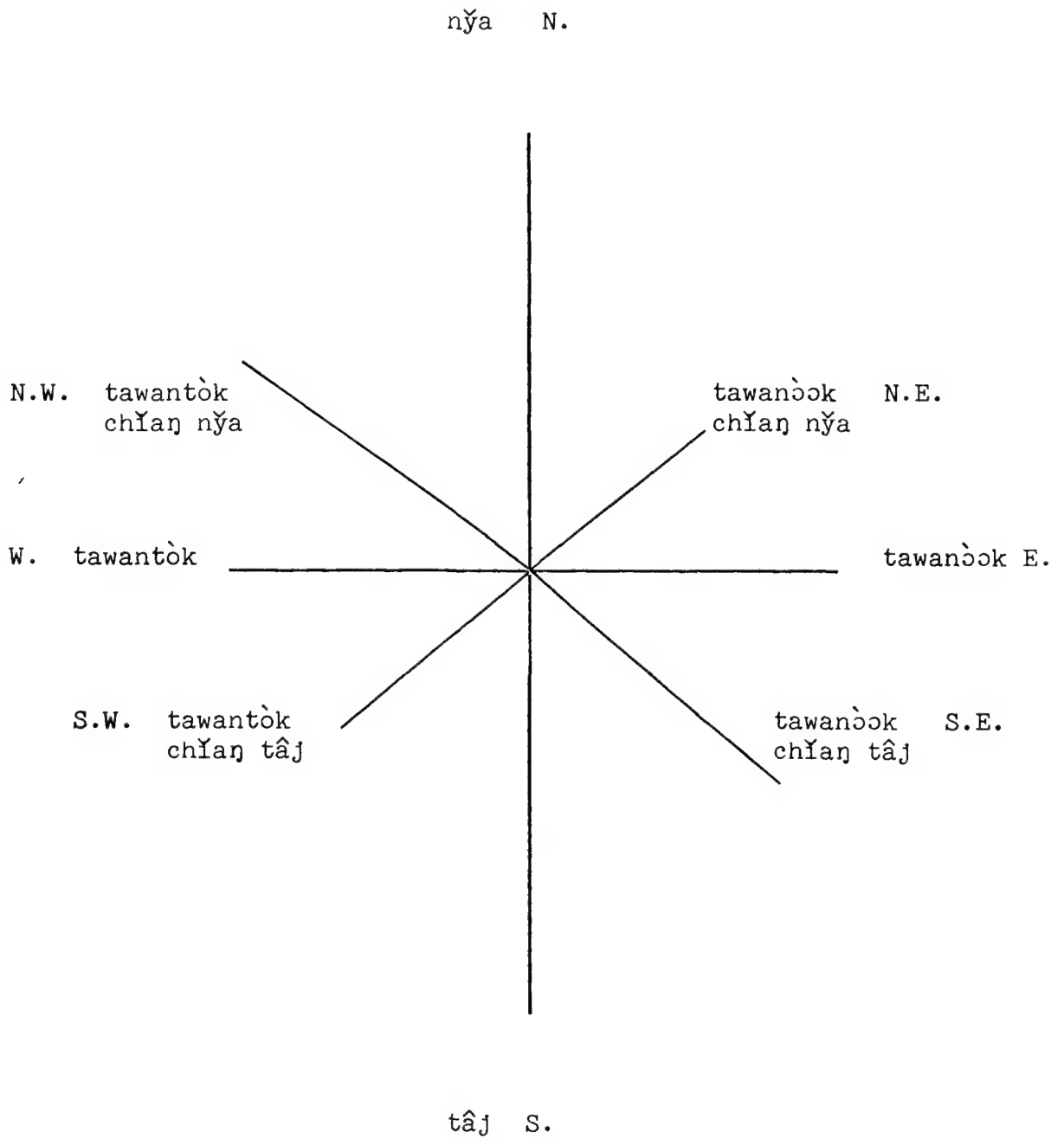
raamâa	the Rama (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
ráan (hèn, ráan)	shop, store
ráanaahăan (ráan)	restaurant
ráankhăajkhŏŋ (ráan)	shop, store
râatburii	Ratburi (city in Central Thailand)
roonphajabaan (roon, hèn)	hospital
roonrēm (roonrēm-hèn)	hotel
rót (khan)	car
ryplàaw	question word (negative)
săathoon	Sathorn (street in Bangkok)
sathăanthûut (hèn)	embassy
sŏŋkhlăa	Songkla (city in South Thailand)
sýy	to buy, (with <u>khŏŋ</u> 'to shop')
tàanŋanwăt	in the provinces, out-of-town
tâj	South, under
talàat (hèn)	market
talàat năt (hèn)	a special kind of market which is open regularly on a certain day
tennít	tennis
tênram	to dance (Western style)
thaan	to eat, drink (elegant term)
tham	to do, make
thamŋaan	to work
thanaakhaan (hèn)	bank
thîithamŋaan (hèn, thîi)	office
thíp thŏop	Tip Top (name of a coffee shop)
thoorasàp	to telephone, a telephone
wăajnáam	to swim

MAP SHOWING SOME
THAI PROVINCES



THAI BASIC COURSE

CHART SHOWING COMPASS POINTS



LESSON EIGHT

8.0 BASIC DIALOG: Americans at Work in Bangkok.

- | | | |
|----|--|--|
| A: | paj năj khráp | Where are you going? |
| B: | paj thamnaan khráp | I'm going to work. |
| A: | khun thamnaan thîinăj khráp | Where do you work? |
| B: | phôm thamnaan thîi sathăanthût
ameerikan khráp | I work at the American
Embassy. |
| A: | phŷan khǒŋ khun thamnaan thîi
sathăanthût mŷankan răkhráp | Does your friend work
at the Embassy too? |
| B: | plàaw khráp | No, he doesn't. |
| A: | kháw thamnaan araj khráp | What does he do? |
| B: | kháw pen câwnâathîi juusít khráp | He's a USIS officer. |
| A: | thîithamnaan khǒŋ kháw jùu
thîinăj khráp | Where's his office? |
| B: | jùu thîi thanǒn săathoon tâj
khráp | On South Sathorn Street. |

8.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Thai Compounds

Thai compounds like those of any other language can be explained in terms of the regular rules of syntax of the language. If asked, the native speaker can provide a derivation for any particular compound. For example, if asked to explain (provide a derivation) for the compound Parking permit, a native speaker of English would probably say 'It's a permit for parking your car', or 'It's a permit needed for parking your car', or something like that. Although there is an obvious meaning relationship between these derivations and the compound, the syntax is not the same.

The relationship between a compound and any of its derivations in Thai reveals the same kind of similarities and differences. If you do not know the meaning of a Thai compound, ask any of your instructors. They will provide you with a derivation that should make the meaning clear. If you decide to originate Thai compounds, you will find that you have only limited success. This should not inhibit you from doing this, but you should check your efforts with the native speaker before using them.

In this text compounds will be analyzed into their constituent parts and the meaning of each part will be given, and the meaning of the compound as a whole will be given. In some cases the form class of the parts will be given, thus: Noun + Noun: sathǎan 'place' + thûut 'Ambassador', This will be done to illustrate the different kinds of compounds in Thai.

1. Noun Compound: Noun + Noun

sathǎanthûut 'embassy': sathǎan 'place' + thûut 'ambassador'

câwnâathîi 'official, officer, staff member': câw 'ruler' + nâathîi 'duty'. This word is normally followed by a particular office, as in câwnâathîi tamruat 'police official', etc.

thahǎanbòk 'soldier': thahǎan 'military person' + bòk 'earth'; rya 'boat', aakaat 'air', thus thahǎanrya 'sailor' and thahǎanaakaat 'airman'.

khâarâatchakaan 'government employee'. khâa 'servant' + râatcha 'pertaining to the king' + kaan 'work, affairs' khâarâatchakaan thahǎan 'military government employee' khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan 'civilian government employee', krasuan taan prathêet 'Ministry of Foreign Affairs': krasuan 'ministry' + taan 'different, other' + prathêet 'country'. krasuan + kalaahôm 'defense' means 'Ministry of Defense'.

krom tamruat 'police Department': krom 'department' (major subdivision of a ministry) + tamruat 'police'.

koon thap bok 'The Army': koon thap 'military forces' + bok 'land'; koon thap rya 'The Navy': koon thap + rya 'boat'; koon thap aakaat 'The Air Forces': koon thap + aakaat 'air'.

nitsit was used originally to refer to students who lived in. Now only part of the students live at Chulalongkorn, Kasetsart, and the Fine Arts University, but students at those universities are still called nitsit. Students at Thammasart University are called naksyksaa. Other students are called nakrian.

chaawnaa 'rice farmer'; chaawsuan 'gardener, orchardist', or 'person who works on a rubber plantation'; chaawraj 'an upland farmer who grows crops like tobacco, tapioca, corn, etc. phokhaa 'merchant'; pho 'male engaged in' + khaa 'trade'. roonphajabaan 'hospital': roon 'building' + phajabaan 'to nurse'.

naanphajabaan 'female nurse': naan 'woman' + phajabaan

2. Noun Compound: Noun + Verb

phuuchawchaan 'expert': phu 'person, one who' + chawchaan 'to be expert, experienced'.

naksyksaa 'student (in college or university)': nak- 'one who (agent noun) + syksaa 'to study'

phu occurs before a large number of verbs to form agent noun compounds (like -er in English farmer). It rarely occurs alone.

nak- 'expert, authority' occurs before a limited number of verbs to form agent nouns. It can not occur alone. Other examples are nakkhian 'author', nakdontri 'musician', etc.

- b) Noun compounds (like those just described) take the same position as single nouns in compounds, for example:

<u>cawnathai</u> <u>tamruat</u> <u>khon</u> <u>ni</u>	'This police official'
<u>naksyksaa</u> <u>si</u> <u>khon</u> <u>nan</u>	'Those 4 students'

- c) jùu 'to be located at, live at' is normally followed by place expressions:

juusôm jùu thîi thanôn phétburi 'USOM is on Petburi Street'.

- d) The question khun thamnaan araj 'What do you do?' can be answered in either of the following ways:

phôm pen (câwnâathîi juusít, etc.) 'I am a USIS officer, etc.'

phôm thamnaan thîi (sathăanthûut ameerikan, etc.) 'I work at the American Embassy, etc.'

- e) Although both paj năj (see 7.2b) and paj thîinăj mean 'Where are (you) going?', they are used in different situations and receive different answers:

Q: paj năj 'Where are you going?'

A: paj thaان khâaw 'I'm going to eat.'

Q: ca paj thaان thîinăj 'Where are you going to eat?'

A: (thîi) ráanaahăan sôn deen 'at the Red Arrow Restaurant'.

paj thîinăj is used when you wish to specify the place.

8.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | | | | |
|--|---|--|--|--|
| 1. kháw pen khruu. | He's a teacher. | | | |
| 2. kháw pen nákrían. | He's a student. | | | |
| 3. kháw pen mǎo. | He's a doctor. | | | |
| 4. kháw pen mĕebăan. | She's a housewife. | | | |
| 5. kháw pen naanphajabaan. | She's a nurse. | | | |
| 6. kháw pen thahăan | <table border="0"> <tr> <td rowspan="3" style="vertical-align: middle; padding-right: 10px;"> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rya} \\ \text{bòk} \\ \text{aakàat} \end{array} \right.$ </td> <td>He's a</td> <td> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sailor} \\ \text{soldier.} \\ \text{airman} \end{array} \right.$ </td> </tr> </table> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rya} \\ \text{bòk} \\ \text{aakàat} \end{array} \right.$ | He's a | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sailor} \\ \text{soldier.} \\ \text{airman} \end{array} \right.$ |
| $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rya} \\ \text{bòk} \\ \text{aakàat} \end{array} \right.$ | He's a | | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sailor} \\ \text{soldier.} \\ \text{airman} \end{array} \right.$ | |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 7. kháw pen phôokháa. | He's a merchant. |
| 8. kháw pen phûuchîawchaan. | He's an expert
(or specialist). |
| 9. kháw pen wítsawákoon. | He's an engineer. |
| 10. kháw pen phátthanaakoön. | He's a community develop-
ment worker. |
| 11. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan. | They're government
employees. |
| 12. kháw pen tamrùat. | He's a policeman. |
| 13. kháw pen chaawnaa. | He's a rice farmer. |
| 14. kháw pen chaawsûan. | He's a gardener. |
| 15. kháw pen chaawrâj. | He's a crop farmer. |

b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	kháw pen khruu	He's a teacher.
phǒm	<u>phǒm</u> pen khruu	I'm a teacher.
tamrùat	phǒm pen <u>tamrùat</u>	I'm a policeman.
mǔo	phǒm pen <u>mǔo</u>	I'm a doctor.
thahǎan rya	phǒm pen <u>thahǎan rya</u>	I'm a sailor.
phôokháa	phǒm pen <u>phôokháa</u>	I'm a merchant.
kháw	<u>kháw</u> pen phôokháa	He's a merchant.
chaawnaa	kháw pen <u>chaawnaa</u>	He's a farmer.
naanphajabaa	kháw pen <u>naanphajabaa</u>	She's a nurse.
phátthanaakoön	kháw pen <u>phátthanaakoön</u>	He's a community development worker.
phǒm	<u>phǒm</u> pen phátthanaakoön	I'm a community development worker.
wítsawákoön	phǒm pen <u>wítsawákoön</u>	I'm an engineer.
tamrùat	phǒm pen <u>tamrùat</u>	I'm a policeman.
khun	<u>khun</u> pen tamrùat	You are a policeman.

THAI BASIC COURSE

kháw	<u>kháw</u> pen tamruat	He's a policeman.
thahǎanbòk	kháw pen <u>thahǎanbòk</u>	He's a soldier.
phûuchîawchaan	kháw pen <u>phûuchîawchaan</u>	He's an expert.
khâarâat chakaan	kháw pen <u>khâarâatchakaan</u>	They are government employees.

c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	khun thamnaan araj khráp	What do you do (for a living?)
kháw	<u>kháw</u> thamnaan araj khráp	What does he do?
khon níi	<u>khon níi</u> thamnaan araj khráp	What does this person do?
khon nán	<u>khon nán</u> thamnaan araj khráp	What does that person do?
khun prichaa	<u>khun prichaa</u> thamnaan araj khráp	What does Prichaa do?

d) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	khun thamnaan araj khráp
khun prichaa	<u>khun prichaa</u> thamnaan araj khráp
khun coon	<u>khun coon</u> thamnaan araj khráp
khon nán	<u>khon nán</u> thamnaan araj khráp
khon níi	<u>khon níi</u> thamnaan araj khráp
khun	<u>khun</u> thamnaan araj khráp
kháw	<u>kháw</u> thamnaan araj khráp

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
teacher	khun thamnaan araj	phǒm pen khruu
nurse	khun thamnaan araj	dichán pen naanphajabaan
doctor	khun thamnaan araj	phǒm pen mǎo
soldier	khun thamnaan araj	phǒm pen thahǎan bók
engineer	khun thamnaan araj	phǒm pen wítsawákoon
civilian government employee	khun thamnaan araj	dichán pen khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan
rice farmer	khun thamnaan araj	phǒm pen chaawnaa
community develop- ment worker	khun thamnaan araj	phǒm pen phátthanaakoorn
merchant	khun thamnaan araj	phǒm pen phǎokháa
airman	khun thamnaan araj	phǒm pen thahǎan aakaat
expert	khun thamnaan araj	phǒm pen phûuchíawchaan
university student	khun thamnaan araj	dichán pen náksýksǎa

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phǒm thamnaan thǐi roonphajabaan.	I work at the hospital.
2. phǒm thamnaan thǐi roonrian.	I work at the school.
3. phǒm thamnaan thǐi juusít.	I work at USIS.
4. phǒm thamnaan thǐi juusôm.	I work at USOM.
5. phǒm thamnaan thǐi ee-aj-dii.	I work at AID.
6. phǒm thamnaan thǐi cát-sa-mèek	I work at JUSMAG.
7. phǒm thamnaan thǐi sathǎan thûut.	I work at the Embassy.
8. phǒm thamnaan thǐi krasuan tàan prathêet.	I work at the State Department.
9. phǒm thamnaan thǐi krasuan kalaahǎom	I work at the Ministry of Defense.

g) Substitution Drill

MODEL: Teacher: phǒm thamṇaan thîi roonphajabaan.
(éf-és-aj)

Student: phǒm thamṇaan thîi éf-és-aj.

Continue substitution using the following words:

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. juusít | 4. juusōom |
| 2. cátsamèek | 5. sathǎanthûut ameerikan |
| 3. krasuaṇ kalaa hǒom | 6. krasuaṇ tàaṇ prathêet |

h) Response Drill

MODEL: Teacher: khun thamṇaan thîinǎj Where do you
work?

Student: phǒm thamṇaan thîi ____ (Actual place
of work)

Continue until all students have responded.

i) Response Drill

MODEL: Teacher: khun thamṇaan thîi ____, You work at ____,
châj máj khráp don't you?

Student: mâj châj, phǒm thamṇaan No, I don't.
thîi ____ I work at ____.

or: khráp Yes, I do.
(whichever answer
is correct.)

Continue until all students have responded at least once.

THAI BASIC COURSE

krasuaŋ kalaahŏm	phŏm pen khruu thŭi <u>krasuaŋ kalaahŏm</u>	I'm a teacher at the Ministry of Defense.
thahăan rya	phŏm pen <u>thahăan rya</u> thŭi krasuaŋ kalaahŏm	I'm a sailor at the Ministry of Defense.
mŏ	phŏm pen <u>mŏ</u> thŭi krasuaŋ kalaahŏm	I'm a doctor at the Ministry of Defense.
krasuaŋ tăanprathêet	phŏm pen mŏ thŭi <u>krasuaŋ</u> <u>tăanprathêet</u>	I'm a doctor at the Foreign Ministry.
khăarâatchakaan	phŏm pen <u>khăarâatchakaan</u> thŭi krasuaŋ tăanprathêet	I'm an employee of the Foreign Ministry.
juusít	phŏm pen khăarâatchakaan thŭi <u>juusít</u>	I'm an employee of USIS
căwnăathŭi	phŏm pen <u>căwnăathŭi</u> thŭi juusít	I'm an official of USIS.
sathăanthŭut	phŏm pen căwnăathŭi thŭi <u>sathăanthŭut</u>	I'm an official at the Embassy.

m) Transformation Drill

Combine the two sentences on the left to form one sentence.

Sentences 1 and 2

- khăw pen náksŷksăa
khăw rian thŭi
mahăawítthajaalaj thammasăat
- khăw pen khăarâatchakaan
khăw thamŋaan thŭi
sathăanthŭut

Sentence 3

- khăw pen náksŷksăa thammasăat.
'He's a student at Thammasart.
- khăw pen khăarâatchakaan
sathăanthŭut
'He's an Embassy employee.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. phǒm pen khâarâatchakaan
phǒm thamnaan thîi
krasuan tâanprathêet | phǒm pen khâarâatchakaan
krasuan tâanprathêet
I'm an employee of the
Foreign Ministry |
| 4. khâw pen khâarâatchakaan
khâw thamnaan thîi
krasuan mahâatthaj | khâw pen khâarâatchakaan
krasuan mahâatthaj
He's an employee of the
Interior Ministry |
| 5. khâw pen nâkrian
khâw rian thîi roonriannîi | khâw pen nâkrian roonriannîi
He's a student of this
school. |
| 6. khâw pen nîtsît
khâw rian thîi culaa | khâw pen nîtsît culaa
He's a Chula student. |

n) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

khâw maa càak juusít
khâw maa càak cátsamèek
khon nán maa càak krasuan
tâanprathêet
phátthanaakoon khon nán maa
càak krasuan mahâatthaj
phǒm maa càak sathăanthûut
ameerikan
phûuchîawchaan khon nán maa
càak juusôm

Pattern 2

khâw pen câwnâathîi juusít
khâw pen câwnâathîi cátsamèek
khon nán pen câwnâathîi krasuan
tâanprathêet
phátthanaakoon khon nán pen
câwnâathîi krasuan mahâatthaj
phǒm pen câwnâathîi sathăanthûut
ameerikan
phûuthîawchaan khon nán pen
câwnâathîi juusôm

thahǎan khon nán maa càak
koonthápbòk ameerikan

phûuchaaj khon nán maa càak
krom tamrùat

thahǎan khon nán pen cǎwnâathîi
koonthápbòk ameerikan

phûuchaaj khon nán pen
cǎwnâathîi tamrùat

o) Transformation Drill (Combine Sentences 1 and 2 into 3)

1. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan
phonlaryan

kháw jùu thîi krasuan
kalaahǎom

kháw pen khâarâatchakaan
phonlaryan jùu thîi
krasuan kalaahǎom

2. kháw pen khruu phaasǎa thaj

kháw jùu thîi éf és aj

kháw pen khruu phaasǎa thaj
jùu thîi éf és aj

3. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan
thahǎan

kháw jùu thîi pentaakoon

kháw pen khâarâatchakaan
thahǎan jùu thîi pentakoon

4. kháw pen mǎothahǎan

kháw jùu thîi roonphajabaan
nán

kháw pen mǎothahǎan jùu
thîi roonphajabaan nán

5. kháw pen phûuchîawchaan
thaan kasèt

kháw jùu thîi juusǎom

kháw pen phûuchîawchaan thaan
kasèt jùu thîi juusǎom

6. kháw pen cǎwnâathîi tamrùat

kháw jùu thîi (canwàt) udoon

kháw pen cǎwnâathîi tamrùat
jùu thîi (canwàt) udoon

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. sathǎaniirótfaj jùu thǎi thanǎn phráraam sǐi
The train station is on Rama 4 Street.
2. hǎalamphoon jùu thǎi thanǎn phráraam sǐi
Hualamphong is on Rama 4 Street.
3. sathǎaniirótfaj hǎalamphoon jùu thǎi thanǎn phráraam sǐi
Hualamphong station is on Rama 4 Street.
4. sathǎanthûut jùu thǎi thanǎn wítthajú
The Embassy is on Wireless Road.
5. sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu thǎi thanǎn wítthajú
The American Embassy is on Wireless Road.
6. sǎalaa ameerikan jùu thǎi thanǎn phát phon
The USIS auditorium is on Pat Pong Street.
7. juusôm jùu thǎi thanǎn phétburii
USOM is on Petburi Street.
8. juusít jùu thǎi thanǎn sǎathoon tâj
USIS is on South Sathorn Street.
9. cá-t-sa-mèek jùu thǎi thanǎn sǎathoon tâj
JUSMAG is on South Sathorn Street.
10. thanaakhaan ameerikan jùu thǎi thanǎn suriwon
The Bank of America is on Suriwong Street.
11. phii-éks jùu thǎi khloon tæj
The PX is at Klong Toei.
12. sapòot khláp jùu thǎi thanǎn sanǎam máa
The Sports Club is on Race Track Road.

13. prajsanii klaan jùu thîi thanŏn carœen krun
The Main Post Office is on Charoen Krung Street.

q) Substitution Drill

Cue

juusŏm jùu thîinǎj khráp

Where is USOM?

juusít

juusít jùu thîinǎj khráp

Where is USIS?

sathǎanii rótfaj
hǎalamphoon

sathǎanii rótfaj hǎalamphoon jùu thîinǎj khráp

Where is Hualampong Railroad Station?

sathǎanthûut
ameerikan

sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu thîinǎj khráp

Where is the American Embassy?

thanaakhaan thaj

thanaakhaan thaj jùu thîinǎj khráp

Where is the Thai Bank?

sapŏot khláp

sapŏot khláp jùu thîinǎj khráp

Where is the Sports Club?

cátsamèek

cátsamèek jùu thîinǎj khráp

Where is JUSMAG?

roonrœem eerawan

roonrœem eerawan jùu thîinǎj khráp

Where is the Erawan Hotel?

sǎalaa ameerikan

sǎalaa ameerikan jùu thîinǎj khráp

Where is the USIS Auditorium?

juusŏm

juusŏm jùu thîinǎj khráp

Where is USOM?

8.4 VOCABULARY

ee aj dii	A.I.D. (Agency for International Development)
ee juu ee	A.U.A. (American University Association)
bòk	land (as opposed to sea)
carəən krun	Charoen Krung (name of a street in Bangkok)
cátsamèsk	JUSMAG (Joint Military Assistance Group)
câw	ruler (literally 'prince')
câwnâathîi (khon)	official, officer, staff member
chaawnaa (khon)	rice farmer
chaawrâj (khon)	a crop farmer
chaawsŭan (khon)	gardener, orchardist
culaa	Chula (an abbreviation for Chulalongkorn University)
éf és aj	F.S.I. (Foreign Service Institute)
hŭalamphoon	Hualampong (name of the main train station in Bangkok)
juusít	U.S.I.S. (United States Information Service)
juusŏm	U.S.O.M. (United States Operations Mission)
kasètsàat	agriculture; also the name of the university of agriculture in Bangkok
kháa	to trade, engage in trade
khâarâatchakaan (khon)	government employee
khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan	civilian government employee
khâarâatchakaan thahăan (khon)	military government employee
khlooŋ téej	Klong Toei (Section of Bangkok)
koon	division (subdivision of a <u>krom</u>)

THAI BASIC COURSE

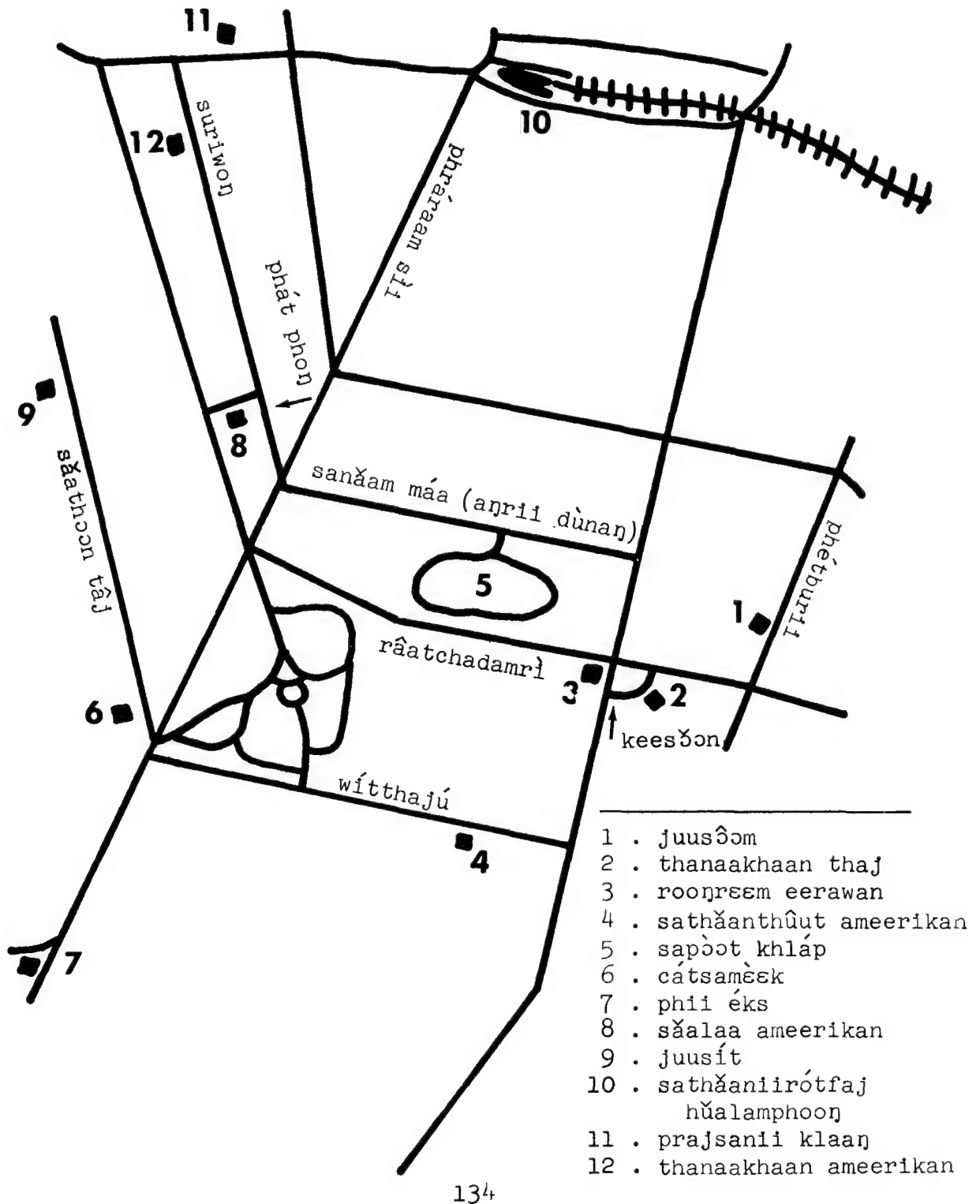
koontháp	the armed forces (of a country)
koontháp aakàat	the Air Forces
koontháp bòk	the Army
koontháp rya	the Navy
kaan	work, affairs
krasuan kalaahõom	Ministry of Defense
krasuan mahàatthaj	Ministry of the Interior
krasuan tàanprathêet	Ministry of Foreign Affairs
krom	department (major subdivision of a ministry)
krom tamrùat	police department
mahāawítthajaalaj	university
mêebâan (khon)	housewife
mýankan	too, also
naan (khon)	female, Mrs.
naanphajaabaan (khon)	female nurse
nâathfi	duty
náksýksăa (khon)	student
nítsit (khon)	student (at Chulalongkorn, Kasetsart, and the Fine Arts Universities)
naan	work
pentaakoon	the Pentagon
phahõnjoothin	Phahonyothin Road (in Bangkok)
phát phon	Pát Pong Street (in Bangkok)
phátthanaakoon (khon)	a community development worker
phii-éks	the PX (Post Exchange)
phonlaryan (khon)	civilian
phôo (khon)	father, male engaged in...
phôo khăa	merchant
phráaathít	Pra-aathit Street (in Bangkok)
phráraam sîi	Rama the Fourth (street)

THAI BASIC COURSE

prajsanii klaan	the main post office
phûuchîawchaan (khon)	an expert
rótfaj (khabuan)	a train
săalaa (lăŋ)	a pavilion, a hall, a public building
săalaa ameerikan	the USIS auditorium
râatchadamnœen	Rachadamnoen (Road)
râatchadamri	Rachadamri (Road)
râatchawithŷi	Rajawithee (Road)
roon	building
rya (lam)	boat
sanăam maa	race track (name of a street in Bangkok)
sapòot khláp	The Royal Bangkok Sports Club
sathăan (hèn)	place, location
sathăanii (hèn)	station
sathăanii rótfaj (hèn)	the railroad station
săathoon tâj	South Sathorn (street in Bangkok)
sii	four
sŏon dœŋ	Red Arrow (name of a restaurant in Bangkok)
suriwon	Suriwong (street in Bangkok)
sŷksăa	to study, learn
tamrùat (khon)	police
thaan kasèt	agricultural
thahăan aakaat (khon)	airman
thahăan bøk (khon)	soldier
thahăan rya (khon)	sailor
thammasaat	Thammasart (university in Bangkok)
thanaakhaan ameerikan	the Bank of America (the American bank)
thanaakhaan thaj	the Bank of Thailand
thanŏn (săaj)	street, road

THAI BASIC COURSE

thîi nǎj	where (as question word); anywhere (in negative statement)
thîi nîi	here
thûut (khon)	the ambassador (common usage)
wítsawákoon (khon)	an engineer
wítthajú	Withayu (Thai name of a street), Wireless Road (English name)



THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON NINE

9.0 BASIC DIALOG: Going to Don Muang to Pick up a Friend.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| A: paj nǎj maa khráp | Where have you been? |
| B: paj duu nǎj maa | To a movie. |
| khun kamlan ca paj nǎj | Where are you about to go to? |
| A: paj doon myan | To Don Muang (airport). |
| paj dûajkan máj | Want to go along? |
| B: mǎj ahá | No, (thanks) |
| khun ca paj thammaj | Why are you going? |
| A: paj ráp phýan | To pick up a friend. |
| B: mǎerfǐ mǎj jùu lǎ | Mary isn't home? |
| A: jùu | She is. |
| B: khǎw mǎj dǎj paj ajútthajaa lǎ | She didn't go to Ayuthaya? |
| A: khráp | That's right. |
| mǎj dǎj paj | She didn't go. |
| B: khǎw kamlan tham araj | What's she doing? |
| A: duu nǎjsǎy | She's studying. |

9.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) Thai verbs do not have tense, i.e. there are no changes in form that correlate with time as in English (see, saw, etc.) The time or state of an action is indicated by the use of time (ca, etc.) and aspect (kamlan, etc.) particles. The use and meaning of these particles and various words relating to time and frequency of occurrence are illustrated on the chart on the next page, which is arranged in normal sentence word order.

THAI BASIC COURSE

Time Words	Subject	Time and aspect Particles		Verb Phrases	Freq. Word	Meaning
	(phǒm)			paj talàat		Time Unspecified(1)
	(phǒm)			paj talàat	thúk wan(2)	Repeated action
weelaa níi khanàníi (3)	(phǒm)	kamlan		paj talàat		Present time action in progress
	(phǒm)	kamlan	ca	paj talàat		Action imminent
	(phǒm)		ca	paj talàat		Future
dĭaw wanníi phrûnńi(4)	(phǒm)		ca	paj talàat		Future
mĭawaanníi mĭa kĭnńi wanníi (5)	(phǒm)			paj talàat		Past
	(phǒm)	khəej		paj talàat		Indefinite Past
	(phǒm)			paj talàat maa		Action just completed, returned to former place

THAI BASIC COURSE

- NOTES: 1) 'Time unspecified' means only that there is no formal indication of time in the sentence.
- 2) thúk wan 'everyday'
- 3) weelaa níi 'at this time', khanà níi 'at present'
- 4) dǎaw 'soon', wanníi 'today', phrûnníi 'tomorrow'
- 5) mýawaanníi 'yesterday', mýakîiníi 'a short time ago'

- b) In questions the question word may play a role in the indication of time or of the state of the action. For example,

Future time: ca paj máj 'Will you go?'

Past time: paj rýplàaw 'Did you go?'

Habitual action: paj thúk wan rýplàaw 'Do you go everyday?'

The question word may also serve to signify the speaker's purpose in asking the question: seeking information, issuing an invitation, asking for confirmation of something he is more or less sure about, indicating surprise, etc. The chart below illustrates the meaning and use of various question words.

Sentence Type	Question Word	Meaning	Response	
			Affirm- ative	Negative
paj	máj	Invitation	paj	mâj { ahá lakhráp
ca paj	máj	Future	paj	{ mâj mâj paj
paj thúk wan	rýplàaw	Habitual	thúk wan	mâj thúkwan

THAI BASIC COURSE

Sentence Type	Question Word	Meaning	Response	
			Affirm- ative	Negative
m̄yawaanníi... paj	rýplàaw	Past	paj	{ plàaw mâj dâj paj
kháw ca paj sýy khǒŋ m̄yawaanníi kháw paj sýy khǒŋ kháw paj sýy khǒŋ maa	châj máj	Confirm- ation of what one is very sure about	{ h̄y khráp châj	{ mâj châj plàaw
kháw { ca kamlan ca paj sýy khǒŋ	lǎ lǎhá rýy khráp	Confirm- ation of what one is less sure about	{ khráp h̄y	plàaw
kháw kamlan paj sýy khǒŋ				
m̄yawaanníi kháw paj sýy khǒŋ	lǎ lǎhá	Confirm- ation of what one is less sure about	{ khráp h̄y	{ plàaw mâj dâj paj
kháw paj sýy khǒŋ maa	rýy khráp		{ khráp h̄y	{ plàaw mâj dâj paj

NEGATIVE QUESTIONS

kháw ca mâj paj sýy khǒŋ	lǎ	Future	paj	{ h̄y, khráp mâj paj
khun mâj paj sýy khǒŋ		Intention	paj	{ h̄y, khráp mâj (paj)
(m̄yaaaanníi) mâj dâj paj sýy khǒŋ	rýy	Past	paj	{ h̄y, khráp mâj dâj paj

NOTE: Between intimates h̄y (pronounced with strong nasal quality) may replace khráp.

9.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u> (Teacher)	<u>Question</u> (Student 1)	<u>Response</u> (Student 2)
thúra	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj thúra maa 'Out on business.'
thĭaw ajútthajaa	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj thĭaw ajútthajaa maa On excursion to Ayuthaya.
duu nǎŋ	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj duu nǎŋ maa To a movie.
thaan khâaw	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj thaان khâaw maa To eat.
sýy khǎŋ	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj sýy khǎŋ maa Shopping.
hôn̄samùt	paj nǎj maa Where have you been?	paj hôn̄samùt maa To the library.

b) Substitution Drill

Cue

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. hōṇsamùt | dĭaw (khun) ca paj <u>hōṇsamùt</u> mǎj
Are you going to the library soon? |
| 2. hōṇlèɛp | dĭaw ca paj <u>hōṇlèɛp</u> mǎj
Are you going to the laboratory soon? |
| 3. hōṇ aahǎan | dĭaw ca paj <u>hōṇaahǎan</u> mǎj
Are you going to the dining room soon? |
| 4. hōṇnám | dĭaw ca paj <u>hōṇnám</u> mǎj
Are you going to the toilet soon? |
| 5. hōṇrian | dĭaw ca paj <u>hōṇrian</u> mǎj
Are you going to the classroom soon? |
| 6. hōṇrian phaasǎa thaj | dĭaw ca paj <u>hōṇrian phaasǎa thaj</u> mǎj
Are you going to the Thai classroom soon? |
| 7. hōṇthamṇaan | dĭaw ca paj <u>hōṇthamṇaan</u> mǎj
Are you going to the work room soon? |
| 8. hōṇthabian | dĭaw ca paj <u>hōṇthabian</u> mǎj
Are you going to the registrar's soon? |
| 9. hōṇthoorasàp | dĭaw ca paj <u>hōṇthoorasàp</u> mǎj
Are you going to the telephone room soon? |
| 10. hōṇaahǎan | dĭaw ca paj <u>hōṇaahǎan</u> mǎj
Are you going to the dining hall soon? |

THAI BASIC COURSE

c) Response Drill (Respond according to situation.)

MODEL: Teacher: dĭaw (khun) ca paj hōŋlèɛp máj

Are you going to the laboratory soon?

Student: Affirmative: paj khráp I am.

Negative: māj paj khráp I am not.

1. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋsamùt máj

Are you going to the library soon?

2. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋaahǎan máj

Are you going to the dining room soon?

3. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋnám máj

Are you going to the toilet soon?

4. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋrian máj

Are you going to the classroom soon?

5. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋrian phaasǎa thaj máj

Are you going to the Thai classroom soon?

6. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋthamŋaan máj

Are you going to the work room soon?

7. dĭaw khun ca paj sathǎani rōtfaj máj

Are you going to the Railroad Station soon?

8. dĭaw khun ca paj rooŋrɛɛm raamǎa máj

Are you going to Hotel Rama soon?

9. dĭaw khun ca paj hōŋthabian máj

Are you going to the registrar's room soon?

10. dĭaw khun ca paj sanǎambin máj

Are you going to the Airport soon?

(Students ask each other the same questions.)

THAI BASIC COURSE

d) Response Drill

MODEL 1: Cue: No

Question: wanníi (khun) ca paj ráanaahǎan máj

Response: mǎj paj khráp

MODEL 2: Cue: Yes.

Question: wanníi (khun) ca paj ráankhǎajkhǒŋ máj

Response: paj khráp

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	<u>Response</u>
no	wanníi ca paj ráankaafɛɛ máj	mǎj paj khráp
yes	wanníi ca paj thǐithamŋaan máj	paj khráp
no	wanníi ca paj talàat máj	mǎj paj khráp
yes	wanníi ca paj hǒŋlèɛp máj	paj khráp
yes	wanníi ca paj hǒŋsamùt máj	paj khráp
no	wanníi ca paj thǐaw máj	mǎj paj khráp
no	wanníi ca paj hǎa mǒɔ máj	mǎj paj khráp
yes	wanníi ca paj thurá máj	paj khráp
no		mǎj paj khráp

e) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	dǎaw (khun) ca paj roonrian máj Are you going to school soon?
prajsanii	dǎaw (khun) ca paj prajsanii máj Are you going to the post office soon?

THAI BASIC COURSE

wanníi	wanníi ca paj prajsaníi máj Are you going to the Post Office today?
sathǎanthûut	wanníi ca paj sathǎanthûut máj Are you going to the embassy today?
phrûnníi	phrûnníi ca paj sathǎanthûut máj Are you going to the embassy tomorrow?
juusít	phrûnníi ca paj juusít máj Are you going to USIS tomorrow?
dǎaw	dǎaw ca paj juusít máj Are you going to USIS soon?
thanakhaan ameerikan	dǎaw ca paj thanakhaan ameerikan máj Are you going to the Bank of America soon?
phrûnníi	phrûnníi ca paj thanakhaan ameerikan máj Are you going to the Bank of America tomorrow?

f) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. no	dǎaw mâj paj ráanaahǎan rǎkhráp Aren't you going to the restaurant soon?	khráp mâj (paj) No, I don't intend to.
2. yes	wanníi mâj paj hônlèep rǎkhráp Aren't you going to the lab today?	paj khráp Yes, I am.
3. no	phrûnníi mâj paj sathǎanthûut rǎkhráp Aren't you going to the embassy tomorrow?	khráp mâj (paj) No, I don't intend to.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|---------|--|--|
| 4. yes | phrûnníi mâj paj juusít rěkháp
Aren't you going to USIS tomorrow? | paj kháp
Yes, I am. |
| 5. no | wanníi mâj paj krasuaŋtään prathêet rěkháp
Aren't you going to the State
Department today? | kháp
mâj (paj)
No, I don't
intend to. |
| 6. yes | dĭaw mâj paj hŋsamùt rěkháp
Aren't you going to the library soon? | paj kháp
Yes, I am. |
| 7. no | dĭaw mâj paj ráanaahăan rěkháp
Aren't you going to the library soon? | kháp
mâj (paj)
No, I don't
intend to. |
| 8. yes | wanníi mâj paj hŋprachum rěkháp
Aren't you going to the
auditorium soon? | paj kháp
Yes, I am. |
| 9. no | wanníi mâj paj roonphajaabaan rěkháp
Aren't you going to the hospital
today? | kháp
mâj (paj)
No, I don't
intend to. |
| 10. yes | phrûnníi mâj paj talàat rěkháp
Aren't you going to the market
tomorrow? | paj kháp
Yes, I am. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

g) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

thîithamṇaan

khun paj thîithamṇaan thúk wan rýplàaw

Do you go to the office every day?

thanakhaan

khun paj thanakhaan thúk wan rýplàaw

Do you go to the bank every day?

ráanaahǎan

khun paj ráanaahǎan thúk wan rýplàaw

Do you go to the restaurant every day?

krasuan tǎan prathêet

khun paj krasuan tǎanprathêet thúk wan rýplàaw

Do you go to the State Department every day?

juusôm

khun paj juusôm thúk wan rýplàaw

Do you go to USOM every day?

juusít

khun paj juusít thúk wan rýplàaw

Do you go to USIS everyday?

bâan

khun klàp bâan thúk wan rýplàaw

Do you go home every day?

h) Response Drill

Affirmative Answer: thúk wan khráp Yes, everyday.

Negative Answer: *mâj thúk wan kháp* No, not everyday.

146

THAI BASIC COURSE

8. no khun paj sathǎanthûut thúk wan mǎj thúk wan
 rýplàaw
 Do you go to the Embassy everyday? No, not everyday.
9. yes khun paj krasuan tǎanprathêet thúk thúk wan khráp
 wan rýplàaw
 Do you go to the Department of Yes, everyday.
 State everyday?
10. yes khun paj sýy kàpkhâw thúk wan rýplàaw thúk wan khráp
 Do you go buy food everyday? Yes, everyday.
11. no khun paj sathǎankonjsûn thúk wan thúk wan khráp
 rýplàaw
 Do you go to the Consulate everyday. No, not everyday.
12. yes khun paj hǎnlèep thúk wan rýplàaw thúk wan khráp
 Do you go to the laboratory Yes, everyday.
 everyday?

1) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. khun paj krasuan tǎanprathêet
thúk wan rýplàaw

Do you go to the State
Department every day?

2. khun paj roonrian thúk wan
rýplàaw

Do you go to the school
everyday?

Pattern 2

- khun mǎj dǎj paj krasuan
tǎan prathêet thúk wan
rǎkhráp

Don't you go to the State
Department everyday?

- khun mǎj dǎj paj roonrian
thúk wan rǎkhráp

Don't you go to the
school everyday?

3. khun paj lēn kóof thúk wan
rýplàaw

Do you go play golf
everyday?

khun māj dāj pāj lēn kóof
thúk wan rěkhráp

Don't you go play
golf everyday.

4. khun paj wāaj nám thúk wan
rěkhráp

Do you go swimming everyday.

khun māj dāj paj wāaj nám
thúk wan rěkhráp

Don't you go swimming
everyday?

5. khun paj ráankhǎajkhǒŋ thúk
wan rýplàaw

Do you go to the shops
everyday?

khun māj dāj paj ráankhǎaj
khǒŋ thúk wan rěkhráp

Don't you go to the
shops everyday?

6. khun paj hōnlèep thúk wan
rýplàaw

Do you go to the laboratory
everyday?

khun māj dāj paj hōnlèep
thúk wan rěkhráp

Don't you go to the
laboratory everyday?

7. khun paj sýy kàpkhâw thúk wan
rýplàaw

Do you go buy food everyday?

khun māj dāj paj sýy
kàpkhâaw thúk wan rěkhráp

Don't you go buy food
everyday?

8. khun paj talàat thúk wan rýplàaw

Do you go to the market
everyday?

khun māj pāj paj talàat
thúk wan rěkhráp

Don't you go to the
market everyday?

THAI BASIC COURSE

j) Response Drill

MODEL: Cue: Yes¹

Question: khun mâj dâj paj Don't you go to the
 sathăanthûut thúk Embassy everyday?
 wan rěkhraph

Response: paj (thúk wan) khráp Yes, I do.

Cue: No¹

Question: khun mâj dâj paj Don't you go to the
 sathăanthûut thúk Embassy everyday?
 wan rěkhraph

Response: khráp
 mâj dâj paj (thúk No, I don't.
 wan) khráp

Cue

Pattern

- | | |
|--------|---|
| 1. yes | khun mâj dâj paj juusôm thúk wan rěkhraph |
| 2. no | khun mâj dâj paj thîi thamnaan thúk wan rěkhraph |
| 3. yes | khun mâj dâj lēn thennít thúk wan rěkhraph |
| 4. no | khun mâj dâj paj hăa mŏo thúk wan rěkhraph |
| 5. yes | khun mâj dâj paj roonrian thúk wan rěkhraph |
| 6. no | khun mâj dâj wâaj nám thúk wan rěkhraph |
| 7. yes | khun mâj dâj paj sapŏot khláp thúk wan rěkhraph |
| 8. no | khun mâj dâj paj thanakhaan ameerikan thúk wan rěkhraph |
| 9. yes | khun mâj dâj paj thurá thúk wan rěkhraph |

¹Yes indicates that the answer is in the affirmative; No, in the negative. However, since the question is in the negative, a No answer confirms the question; whereas, a Yes answer denies it.

THAI BASIC COURSE

k) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	mýawaanníi phǒm paj sathǎanthûut Yesterday I went to the embassy.
mýakíiníi	<u>mýakíiníi</u> phǒm paj sathǎanthûut A short time ago I went to the embassy.
hǎnám	mýakíiníi phǒm paj <u>hǎnám</u> A short time ago I went to the toilet.
hǎnsamùt	mýakíiníi phǒm paj <u>hǎnsamùt</u> A short time ago I went to the library.
fan théep thîi hǎnlèep	mýakíiníi phǒm paj <u>fan théep thîi hǎnlèep</u> A short time ago I went to listen to tapes in the language laboratory.
thaan aahǎan	mýakíiníi phǒm paj <u>thaan aahǎan</u> A short time ago I went to eat.
sýy khǒn thîi talàat	mýakíiníi phǒm paj <u>sýy khǒn thîi talàat</u> A short time ago I went shopping at the market.
mýawaanníi	<u>mýawaanníi</u> phǒm paj sýy khǒn thîi talàat Yesterday I went shopping at the market.
prajsanii	mýawaanníi phǒm paj <u>prajsanii</u> Yesterday I went to the Post Office.

THAI BASIC COURSE

1) Transformation Drill (Affirmative to Negative Statements)

Pattern 1

m̄yawaanníi phǒm paj talàat
m̄yawaanníi phǒm paj thaan
aahǎan thîi roongreem eerawan
m̄yawaanníi phǒm paj roongrian
m̄yawaanníi phǒm paj sathǎan-
thûut
m̄yawaanníi phǒm paj thúra
thîi prajsanii
m̄yakíiníi phǒm paj hǎnleɐp

Pattern 2

m̄yawaanníi phǒm mǎj dǎj paj talàat
m̄yawaanníi phǒm mǎj dǎj paj thaan
aahǎan thîi roongreem eerawan
m̄yawaanníi phǒm mǎj dǎj paj
roongrian
m̄yawaanníi phǒm mǎj dǎj paj
sathǎanthûut
m̄yawaanníi phǒm mǎj dǎj paj
thurá thîi prajsanii
m̄yakíiníi phǒm mǎj dǎj paj
hǎnleɐp

m) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

	m̄yawaanníi khun paj talàat rýplàaw khráp
sathǎanthûut	m̄yawaanníi khun paj sathǎanthûut rýplàaw khráp
m̄yakíiníi ¹	m̄yakíiníi khun paj sathǎanthûut rýplàaw khráp
hǎnsamùt	m̄yakíiníi khun paj hǎnsamùt rýplàaw khráp
hǎnthoorasàp	m̄yakíiníi khun paj hǎn thoorasàp rýplàaw khráp

¹m̄yakíiníi may be pronounced m̄yakíiníi or m̄yakíi or m̄yakíi.

THAI BASIC COURSE

mýawaanníi	mýawaanníi khun paj hôŋ thoorasàp rýplàaw khráp
sýy khǒŋ	mýawaanníi khun paj sýy khǒŋ rýplàaw khráp
hǎa mǒ	mýawaanníi khun paj hǎa mǒ rýplàaw khráp
ráp phýan thîi	mýawaanníi khun paj ráp phýan thîi doon myan
doon myan	ráplàaw khráp

n) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
no	mýawaanníi khun paj talàat rýplàaw Did you go to the market yesterday?	{ mǎj dǎj paj plàaw khráp No, I didn't.
yes	mýawaanníi khun paj talàat rýplàaw Did you go to the market yesterday?	paj khráp Yes, I did.
no	mýawaanníi khun paj thurá thîi thanaakhaan ráplàaw	{ mǎj dǎj paj plàaw khráp
yes	mýawaanníi khun paj krasuan tàan prathêet ráplàaw	paj khráp
no	mýawaanníi khun paj thamnaan rýplàaw	{ mǎj dǎj paj plàaw khráp
yes	mýawaanníi khun paj àan nánsýy thîi hǒŋsamùt rýplàaw	paj khráp
no	mýawaanníi khun paj sòŋ còtmǎaj rýplàaw	{ mǎj dǎj paj plàaw khráp

yes m̄yawaannīi khun paj fan théep thīi hōn māj dāj paj
lèep rýplàaw paj khráp

no m̄yawaannīi khun paj lēn thennīt thīi { māj dāj paj
sapòot khláp rýplàaw } plàaw khráp

o) Transformation Drill (Affirmative to Negative Question)

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

m̄yawaannīi khun paj thīaw rýplàaw

m̄yawaannīi khun māj dāj paj
thīaw rěkhráp

m̄yawaannīi khun paj roonphajaabaan
rýplàaw

m̄yawaannīi khun māj dāj paj
roonphajaabaan rěkhráp

m̄yawaannīi khun maa rian phaasǎa
thaj thīi éf-és-aj rýplàaw

m̄yawaannīi khun māj dāj maa
rian phaasǎathaj thīi
éf-és-aj rěkhráp

m̄yawaannīi khun paj thamnaan
rýplàaw

m̄yawaannīi khun māj dāj paj
thamnaan rěkhráp

m̄yawaannīi khun phóp kháw thīi
sathǎanii rótfaj rýplàaw

m̄yawaannīi khun māj dāj phóp
kháw thīi sathǎanii rótfaj
rěkhráp

m̄yawaannīi khun paj kin aahǎan
thaj thīi ráanaahǎan cennīi
rýplàaw

m̄yawaannīi khun māj dāj paj
kin aahǎanthaj thīi ráanaahǎan
cennīi rěkhráp

THAI BASIC COURSE

mýawaanníi khun paj ráp phýan thîi
sanăambin nēchanan rýplàaw

mýawaanníi khun mâj dâj paj
ráp phýan thîi sanăambin
nēchanan rěkháp

mýawaanníi khun tham kàpkhâaw
thîi bâan rýplàaw

mýawaanníi khun mâj dâj tham
kàp khâaw thîi bâan rěkháp

Ask each student one of the affirmative questions above, and then ask him the same question in the negative (or in reverse order). His answers should be based on the facts of the situation.

p) Response Drill (Give negative responses to the questions)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. mýawaanníi khun mâj dâj paj ajútthajaa lěkháp Didn't you go to Ayuthaya yesterday?	{ khráp (mâj dâj paj) { mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
2. khun mâj dâj paj duu năj lě Did you go to the movies?	{ khráp (mâj dâj paj) { mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
3. dǎaw khun ca paj hōnsamùt máj Are you going to the library soon?	{ mâj { mâj paj No, I'm not.
4. wanníi khun ca paj lēn thennít máj Are you going to play tennis today?	{ mâj { mâj paj No, I'm not.

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. phrûnîi khun ca paj bâan khâw máj

{ māj
māj paj

Are you going to his house tomorrow?

No, I'm not.

q) Response Drill (Response negatively or affirmatively according to the cue word.)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
yes	khâw māj dāj paj ajútthajaa lǎ He didn't go to Ayuthaya?	paj Yes, he went.
yes	khâw māj dāj paj krasuan tàanprathêet lǎ Didn't he go to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs?	paj Yes, he went.
yes	khâw māj dāj paj ráp phyan thîi doon myan lǎ Didn't he go pick up his friend at Don Muang?	paj Yes, he went.
no	mæerîi māj dāj paj ajúthajaa lǎ Didn't Mary go to Ayuthaya?	{ khráp (māj dāj paj) māj dāj paj No, she didn't.
no	khun māj dāj paj hônlèep lǎ Didn't you go to the lab?	{ khráp (māj dāj paj) māj dāj paj No, I didn't.
no	khun māj dāj paj thaana khâaw maa lǎ Haven't you been to eat?	{ khráp (māj dāj paj) māj dāj paj No, I haven't.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- r) Substitution Drill (Student 2 is to supply an 'activity' that fits the location given.)

MODEL: Cue words: wanníi... prajsaníi

Student 1: wanníi phǒm ca paj prajsaníi

Student 2: khun ca paj sǒn còtmǎaj rǎkhráp

Student 1: khráp

1. dǎaw... ráanaahǎan
2. phrûnníi... roonphajabaan
3. wanníi... talàat
4. mǎwawaanníi... thanakhaan (thurá)
5. dǎaw... hǎnthoorasàp
6. mǎyakíi... hǎnsamùt
7. wanníi... sanǎambin doon myan
8. dǎaw... hǎnlèep
9. mǎwawaanníi... thǎithamnaan
10. dǎaw... ráankaafæ

Note to the instructor: If the students have difficulty supplying an activity to go with drill, the instructor may suggest one.

9.4 EXERCISES

Find out from other students:

- a. If they went to any of the following places yesterday:

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. school | 4. market |
| 2. post office | 5. work |
| 3. Bank of America | 6. a restaurant |

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Where they will go tomorrow.

c) Where they did any of the following things:

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. went to work | 4. went to mail a letter |
| 2. went shopping | 5. went for a walk |
| 3. went to see the doctor | 6. played tennis |

d) If they went to the following places a short time ago.

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. laboratory | 5. a restaurant |
| 2. library | 6. to work |
| 3. home | 7. Boston |
| 4. school | |

e) Who did any of the following things a short time ago.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. go to the bank | 6. cook food |
| 2. play golf | 7. do some typing |
| 3. go home | 8. read a book |
| 4. go to the hospital | 9. make a phone call |
| 5. repair a car | |

f) What they do everyday.

g) If they didn't do any of the following things yesterday:

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. drink coffee | 6. go to the Registrar's |
| 2. eat food | 7. study (at home) |
| 3. go shopping | 8. speak English |
| 4. go to the lab | 9. went to pick up a friend |
| 5. speak Thai | 10. work |

THAI BASIC COURSE

h) If they will do any of the following things today:

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. go to the doctor's | 6. go to work |
| 2. play music | 7. go home |
| 3. teach | 8. go to the library |
| 4. go on business | 9. swim |
| 5. write a book | 10. eat |

9.5 VOCABULARY

bin	to fly
ca	will, shall (future particle)
cennîi	Jenny (name)
dĭaw	soon
doon myan	Don Muang (The name of the main commercial airport in Bangkok)
fan	to listen
hôn (hôn)	room
hôn aahăan (hôn)	dining room, dining hall
hôn lèep (hôn)	laboratory (English loan 'lab')
hôn nám (hôn)	toilet
hôn prachum (hôn)	auditorium
hôn samùt (hôn)	library
hôn thabian (hôn)	registrar's (office)
hôn thamnaan (hôn)	work room
hôn thoorasàp (hôn)	telephone room
kamlan	aspect particle indicating action in process
kàp, ka-	with
khăaj	to sell

koŋsǔn (khon)	the Consul
kóof	golf
lèɛp (hôn)	lab (English loan)
mýa kǐi níi, mýakǐi, mýakǐi	a short time ago
mýawaannǐi	yesterday
phrûnnǐi	tomorrow
ráan kaafɛɛ (ráan)	coffee shop
ráp	to receive, accept
(paj / maa) ráp	to go meet someone, to go get something
samǎɔ	always, regularly, consistently
sanǎam (hèn)	field (as in airfield, sports field, etc.)
sanǎam bin (hèn)	airport
sathǎan koŋsǔn (hèn)	the Consulate
sòn	to send or ship something; to see someone off, to take someone somewhere
tɛɛ	but
thammaj	why (question word)
théep	tape (English loan word)
thúk	every, each
wannǐi	today

LESSON TEN

(REVIEW)

10.0 BASIC EPISODE:

khun coon naamsakun samít pen khon amerikan. kháw thamnaan thîi satháanthûut amerikan. bâan khǎon kháw jùu thîi thanǎn wítthajú. bâan khǎon kháw jàj lé sabaaj.

khun coon maa càak myan denwêe rát khooloradô. phanrajaa khǎon kháw chýy maaria, maa càak myan saprinfil rát wæcinia. phanrajaa khun coon sǎaj mâak.

khun coon phûut phaasǎa thaj kèn mâak. kháw khœj rian phaasǎa thaj thîi roonrian sǎon phaasǎa khǎon krasuan tàanprathêet. kháw àan phaasǎa thaj dâj dii tè kháw khîan mâj pen. kháw chǎop phûut phaasǎa thaj kàp khon thaj samœ. phanrajaa khǎon kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj dii mýankan. kháw mâj khœj rian phaasǎa thaj thîi roonrian. kháw rian càak khon thaj naj talàat, ráankhǎajkhǎon lé taam thanǎn.

10.1 QUESTIONS ON BASIC EPISODE

1. khun coon naamsakun araj
2. kháw pen khon chǎat araj
3. kháw thamnaan thîinǎj
4. bâan khǎon kháw jùu thîinǎj

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. khun cɔɔn maa càak rát araj, myan araj
6. phanrajaa khɔɔn kháw chýy araj
7. phanrajaa khɔɔn kháw maa càak nǎj
8. khun cɔɔn phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
9. kháw àan phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
10. kháw khǎan phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
11. phanrajaa khɔɔn kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj máj
12. kháw khœɔj rian thîi roonrian máj
13. kháw rian phaasǎa thaj càak khraj

10.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS¹

a) Response Drill

MODEL: Teacher: mií buríi máj khráp

Do you have a cigarette?

Student: Affirmative: mií khráp Yes, I do.

Negative: mâj mií khráp No, I don't.

<u>Cue words:</u>	dinsɔɔ	nǎnsýy	phěenthîi
	kâwîi	nansýyphim	rûup
	kradaat	ɲœn	samùt
	faj	pàakkaa	tó
	naalikaa	phýan	khruu

Repeat the above drill using negative questions.

(mâj mií buríi rýkhráp).

¹The purpose of drills a through o is to improve fluency, therefore, they should be done rapidly, so that the student will learn to respond automatically.

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Response Drill (Perform as in Drill a)

MODEL: Teacher: phěnthfi dii máj

Is the map good?

Student: Affirmative: dii khráp Yes, it is.

Negative: māj dii khráp No, it isn't.

Cue words: nánsŷy dīnsŷo
kháw naalikaa
roonrian samùt
khruu aakàat
pàakkaa kradaat

Repeat this drill using negative questions.

c) Response Drill (As in Drill a)

MODEL: Teacher: aakàat dii máj

Is the weather good?

Student: Affirmative: dii khráp Yes, it is.

Negative: māj dii khráp No, it isn't.

Cue words: nǎaw dii
khun aahǎan
sǎaj rón
rûup kháw
pàakkaa dii

Repeat the drill using negative questions.

d) Response Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. nánssŷy lêm năj dīi	lêm nán
2. kâwīi tua năj dīi	tua nán
3. phûuchaaŷ khon năj phûut phaasăa thai kèn	khon nán
4. nanphajabaaŷ khon năj sŷaŷ	khon nán
5. dīnsŷŷ thên năj dīi	thên nán
6. tŷ tua năj sŷaŷ	tua nán
7. câw nâathīi khon năj năaw	khon nán
8. rūup baj năj sŷaŷ	baj nán
9. phēenthīi phên năj dīi	phên nán
10. khruu khon năj chŷy cŷon	khon nán

Repeat this drill using nīi for nán in the responses.

e) Response Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun khēej pen thahăan mǎj	khēej khráp
2. khun khēej paj parīit mǎj	khēej khráp
3. khun khēej paj thīaw kruŷ room mǎj	khēej khráp
4. khun khēej thamŋaan thīi juusīt mǎj	khēej khráp
5. khun khēej rian phaasăa phamăa mǎj	khēej khráp
6. khun khēej jŷu taaŷ prathēet mǎj	khēej khráp
7. khun khēej kin aahăan thaj mǎj	khēej khráp
8. khun khēej pen nītsīt culaa mǎj	khēej khráp
9. khun khēej sŷŷon nánssŷy mǎj	khēej khráp
10. khun khēej mīi rót faràŷ mǎj	khēej khráp

Repeat the above drill with negative responses: (măj khēej).

Repeat the above drill using negative questions.

f) Response Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun khàp rôt pen máj	pen khráp
2. khun tham kàp khâaw pen máj	pen khráp
3. khun lên dontri1 pen máj	pen khráp
4. khun wâaj nám pen máj	pen khráp
5. khun phim nánsǎy pen máj	pen khráp
6. khun àan nánsǎy thaj pen máj	pen khráp
7. khun phûut phaasǎa juan pen máj	pen khráp

Repeat the drill with negative responses: (mâj pen).

g) Response Drill (Repeat drill f substituting dâj for pen in questions and responses).

h) Response Drill (Repeat drill f substituting kèn for pen in questions and responses.)

NOTE: In Drills f, g, and h, the questions may be asked in the negative, as in the following examples:

From drill f: khun khàp rôt mâj pen rěkhráp

From drill g: khun khàp rôt mâj dâj rěkhráp

From drill h: khun khàp rôt mâj kèn rěkhráp

i) Response Drill (Repeat drill f substituting dâj di1 for pen in the questions and di1 for pen in answers.)

j) Response Drill (Give a negative response to each question).

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. m̂yawaanníi paj thanaakhan rýplàaw Did you go to the bank yesterday?	mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
2. m̂yawaanníi paj duu nǎj rýplàaw Did you go to the movies yesterday?	mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
3. m̂yakíiníi paj thaان kaafɛ rýplàaw Did you go drink coffee a short time ago?	mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
4. m̂yakhyynníi duu thii wii rýplàaw Did you watch TV last night?	mâj dâj duu No, I didn't.
5. m̂yacháawníi maa roonrian rýplàaw Did you come to school this morning?	mâj dâj maa No, I didn't.
6. m̂yawaanníi paj wâaj nám rýplàaw Did you go swimming yesterday?	mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.

k) Response Drill (Respond negatively to the questions.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw jùu mǎj Is he in?	mâj jùu No, he isn't.
2. khruu jùu mǎj Is the teacher in?	mâj jùu No, she isn't.
3. phanrajaa khun jùu mǎj Is your wife in?	mâj jùu No, she isn't.

4. mǎo jùu máj	mâj jùu
Is the doctor in?	No, he isn't.

5. nǎoŋsǎaw khun jùu máj	mâj jùu
Is your younger sister in?	No, she isn't.

Respond affirmatively to the questions above.

1) Response Drill (Respond negatively to these questions.)¹

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. roonrian nán jùu nâj krunthêep rýplàaw Is that school in Bangkok?	mâj dâj jùu No, it isn't.
2. udoon jùu phâak isǎan rýplàaw Is Udorn in N.E. Thailand?	mâj dâj jùu No, it isn't.
3. sathǎan koŋsǔn thaj jùu thîi myaŋ njuu jók rýplàaw Is the Thai consulate in New York city?	mâj dâj jùu No, it isn't.
4. juusôm jùu thanŋn sǐlom rýplàaw Is USOM on Silom Street?	mâj dâj jùu No, it isn't.
5. bâan khun jùu thanŋn sǎathoon rýplàaw Is your house on Sathorn Street?	mâj dâj jùu No, it isn't.

NOTE: Respond affirmatively to the questions above.

¹In drill K the subject of the sentence is an animate noun; in drill L it is an inanimate noun. Observe the contrast in usage:

Drill K: Question: ...jùu máj Answer: mâj jùu

Drill L: Question: ...jùu... rýplàaw Answer: mâj dâj jùu

m) Response Drill (Respond affirmatively to the invitations.)

<u>Invitation</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. paj kin khâaw dûajkan máj Shall we go eat together?	paj khráp Yes, let's.
2. paj thîaw myan thaj dûajkan máj Shall we take a pleasure trip to Thailand?	paj khráp Yes, let's do that.
3. paj duu năj dûajkan máj Shall we go to a movie?	paj khráp Yes, let's go.
4. paj sýy khǒŋ dûajkan máj Shall we go shopping?	paj khráp Yes, let's.
5. paj ráp phýan thîi sathǎani rǒtfaj dûajkan máj Shall we go pick up (our) friend at the train station?	paj khráp Yes, let's go.

(Respond negatively to the above invitations (mâj paj)).

n) Response Drill (Give negative responses to the questions.)

<u>Questions</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khâw ca paj sýy khǒŋ lǎ Is he going shopping?	plàaw khráp No, he isn't.
2. khâw ca paj thîaw lǎ Is he going out?	plàaw khráp No, he isn't.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 3. khun ca tham aahǎan lǎ
Are you going to cook? | plàaw khráp
No, I'm not. |
| 4. khun ca khǎan còtmǎj lǎ
Are you going to write a letter? | plàaw khráp
No, I'm not. |
| 5. phanrajaa khun ca paj wiatnaam lǎ
Is your wife going to Vietnam? | plàaw khráp
No, she isn't. |

Give affirmative answers (khráp) to the above questions.

o) Response Drill (Give affirmative answers.)

- | <u>Question</u> | <u>Response</u> |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. khun kamlan ca paj sýy khǒn rýkhráp
Are you on the point of going shopping? | khráp
Yes, I am. |
| 2. phanrajaa khun kamlan ca paj duu nǎn rýkhráp
Is your wife just about ready to go to a movie? | khráp
Yes, she is. |
| 3. khun kamlan ca sǒn nǎnsýy rýkhráp
Are you about to begin teaching? | khráp
Yes, I am. |
| 4. lûuk khun kamlan ca paj roonrian rýkhráp
Are your children just about to leave for school? | khráp
Yes, they are. |
| 5. khruu kamlan ca paj hôn lèep rýkhráp
Is the teacher on the point of going to the language lab? | khráp
Yes, he is. |

Respond negatively to the above questions.

p) Sentence Combination Drill

Using tèe 'but' as a linking word combine the two sentences to form a new one, as in the example below:

Sentence 1: kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj pen
He can speak Thai.

Sentence 2: kháw khǎan (phaasǎa thaj) mâj pen
He can't write Thai.

New Sentence: kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj pen tèe khǎan mâj pen
He can speak Thai, but (he) can't write it.

Sentences 1 and 2

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. kháw pen khondi1
kháw pen khon mâj sǎaj | kháw pen khondi1 tèe mâj sǎaj |
| 2. kháw pen khonsǎaj
kháw pen khon mâj di1 | kháw pen khonsǎaj tèe mâj di1 |
| 3. kháw phûut kèn
kháw thamnaan mâj kèn | kháw phûut kèn tèe thamnaan
mâj kèn |
| 4. kháw pen khonthaj
kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj
mâj pen | kháw pen khonthaj tèe phûut
phaasǎa thaj mâj pen |
| 5. kháw nǎaw
phǎm rǎon | kháw nǎaw tèe phǎm rǎon |
| 6. kháw di1
phanrajaaj kháw mâj di1 | kháw di1 tèe phanrajaaj kháw
mâj di1 |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 7. phǒm phûut wâa 'chûaj sòn
nǎnsǎy nòɔj'
kháw sòn pàakkaa | phǒm phûut wâa 'chûaj sòn
nǎnsǎy nòɔj' tɛe kháw
sòn pàakkaa |
| 8. naanphajabaan jùu
mǎɔ mâj jùu | naanphajabaan jùu tɛe mǎɔ
mâj jùu |
| 9. phǒm tham aahǎan farànsèet dâj
phǒm tham aahǎan farànsèet
mâj kèn | phǒm tham aahǎan farànsèet
dâj tɛe mâj kèn |
| 10. kháw lèn thennít dâj
kháw lèn thennít mâj kèn | kháw lèn thennít dâj tɛe
mâj kèn |

10.3 EXERCISE

- a) Have each student tell his own life story in the manner of the Basic Episode (10.0).
- b) When student A has finished his short biography, student B will ask student C questions about it. This procedure should continue until each student has taken all three roles.

10.4 VOCABULARY

àan	to read
chôɔp	to like, be fond of
khoolooradôo	Colorado
saprinfil	Springfield
taam	along, after; to follow
wæecinia	Virginia

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON ELEVEN

11.0 BASIC DIALOG: At the Language School

- A: thîi roonrian sŏon phaasăa
thîi khun rian mii khonthaj
lăaj khon mǎj At the language school
where you studied are
there many Thais?
- B: lăaj khon Yes, many.
- A: mii năkrian phaasăa thaj thăwraj How many Thai language
students are there?
- B: mǎj sâap khráp I don't know.
- A: naj chán khun mii năkrian
kîi khon How many students are
there in your class?
- B: hăa khon khráp Five.
- A: khun rian araj kan bâan What (things) are you
studying?
- B: àan, phûut, khŭan lé plē Reading, speaking,
writing, and translating.
- A: khăw sŏon phaasăa araj bâan What languages do they
teach?
- B: lăaj phaasăa khráp. mii phaasăa
juan, laaw, farànsèet, sapeen,
lé phaasăa òyn òyn Many languages. Viet-
namese, Lao, French,
Spanish, and other
languages.
- A: mii khruu chăat tàan tàan
(thánmòt) thăwraj khráp Altogether how many
teachers of different
nationalities are there?
- B: lăaj sĭp khon khráp Several tens (less than
a hundred).

11.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) kan 'each other, mutually, as a group' can be used
1. As a pluralizer of the subject of the sentence:
pít pratuu kan 'you (plural) shut the door' or
 2. to indicate that two or more persons or things are mutually involved in some activity or are related in some other way.

A:	khruu			phûut phaasăa thaj	kàp nákrian
B:			nákrian	phûut phaasăa thaj	kàp khruu
A + B:	khruu	{ lé kàp	nákrian	phûut phaasăa thaj	<u>kan</u>
A:	'The teacher speaks Thai with the student'.				
B:	'The student speaks Thai with the teacher'.				
A + B:	'The teacher and student speak Thai with each other'.				

- b) araj, khraj, and năj all have interrogative and indefinite meaning (neither singular or plural). When used in negative sentences the meaning is indefinite:

phǒm māj dāj duu araj

'I didn't see anything.'

māj mīi khraj sâap

(There is no one that knows.)

'No one knows.'

khun māj dāj paj năj rě

'Didn't you go anywhere?'

araj, khraj, and nǎj can be made plural by the addition of bâaŋ. (Here they have interrogative meaning.)

mii nánsǎy <u>araj</u> <u>bâaŋ</u>	'What books are there?'
khun ca paj <u>nǎj</u> <u>bâaŋ</u>	'What places are you going to?'
khun phûut phaasǎa thaj <u>kàp</u> <u>khraj</u> <u>bâaŋ</u>	'Who all do you speak Thai with with?'

- c) Numerals¹ include all of the cardinal numbers plus some other quantity words. Numerals occur in constructions before classifiers. Some of the quantity words are lǎaj 'many, several', baaŋ 'some', kǐi 'how many?', thúk 'each, every', nóoj 'few', and mâj-kǐi 'not many'.

khruu lǎaj khon	'several teachers'
nánsǎy baaŋ lêm	'some books'
tó kǐi tua	'how many books?'
dínsǎo mâj-kǐi thêeŋ	'not many pencils'
nákrian nóoj khon	'few students'

The Thai numerical system is a decimal system, and with a few exceptions compound numbers are made by multiplying by and / or adding to the numbers from 1 to 10.

The numbers from 1 to 10 are: nỳn '1', sǎoŋ '2', sǎam '3', sìi '4', hǎa '5', hòk '6', cèt '7', pèet '8', kâaw '9', sìp '10'.

Multiples of ten (except 20) are made by putting the multiplier in front of ten, thus 30 is sǎam sìp (3 x 10),

¹For a full treatment of numerals, see Noss, 109 ff.

THAI BASIC COURSE

70 is cèt sĭp (7 x 10), etc. Numbers to be added to 10 or multiples of 10 occur afterwards, thus 13 is sĭp sǎam (1 x 10 + 3), 34 is sǎam sĭp sĭi (3 x 10 + 4), etc. 20 is jĭi sĭp; 22 is jĭi sĭp sǎon.

Except for the number 'one' itself, èt is used for 'one', thus 21 is jĭi sĭp èt; 51 is hǎa sĭp èt, etc.

100 is nỳn rǎoj or rǎoj, but 101 is rǎoj èt. 400 is sĭi rǎoj; 423 is sĭi rǎoj jĭi sĭp sǎam, etc.

1000 is nỳn phan or phan; 10,000 is nỳn mỳyn or mỳyn.

100,000 is nỳn sĕen or sĕen, and 1,000,000 is nỳn lǎan or lǎan.

15,000 is (nỳn) mỳyn hǎa phan (1 x 10,000 plus 5 x 1000). sĭp hǎa phan (15 x 1,000) is not acceptable.

450,000 is sĭi sĕen hǎa mỳyn (4 x 100,000 plus 5 x 10,000), sĭi rǎoj hǎa sĭp phan (450 x 1,000) is not acceptable.

- d) One sentence may be included in another and serve as a modifier or specifier of some part of that sentence. thĭi may serve as a connector between the main sentence and the included sentence.

Main sentence:	nánjsǎy		dĭi
Included sentence:		kháw khĭan	
Resultant sentence:	nánjsǎy thĭi	kháw khĭan	dĭi

'The books he writes are good.'

thîi kháw khǎan serves as a modifier of nánsǎy. A response to the question nánsǎy araj dii 'what books are good?' could be nánsǎy thîi kháw khǎan 'the books he writes'.

Main sentence:	nánsǎy lêm nán		dii
Included sentence:		kháw khǎan	
Resultant sentence:	nánsǎy lêm thîi	kháw khǎan	dii

'The book he wrote is good'.

thîi kháw khǎan serves as a specifier of (nánsǎy) lêm. A response to the question nánsǎy lêm nǎj dii 'Which book is good?' could be lêm thîi kháw khǎan 'the one he wrote'.

- e) ỳn means 'other' in the sense of a different one not an additional one of the same kind. ỳn ỳn means 'others'; it acts as a pluralizer after nouns.

phaasǎa ỳn 'another (different) language'

phaasǎa ỳn ỳn 'other (different) languages'

.... lǎ ỳn ỳn (lit. 'and others') 'et cetera'

11.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. kháw phûut phaasǎathaj kàp phǎm
phǎm phûut phaasǎathaj kàp kháw
raw phûut phaasǎathaj <u>kan</u> | He speaks Thai with me.
I speak Thai with him.
We speak Thai <u>together</u> . |
| 2. kháw rúucàk khon nán
khon nán rúucàk kháw
kháw rúucàk <u>kan</u> | He knows that person.
That person knows him.
They know <u>each other</u> . |

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj
phŷan phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj
raw rian phaasǎa thaj kan

I study Thai.
My friend studies Thai.
We both study Thai.

b) Combination Drill

Patterns 1 and 2

1. phǒm phŷut phaasǎa aṅkrít kàp kháw }
kháw phŷut phaasǎa aṅkrít kàp phǒm }
2. khruu phŷut phaasǎa thaj kàp nákrían }
nakrían phŷut phaasǎa thaj kàp khruu }
3. khun cǒon phŷut phaasǎa jǽraman }
khun cim phŷut phaasǎa jǽraman }
4. phŷan phǒm rúucàk khun }
khun rúucàk phŷan phǒm }
5. khun mǽrŋi paj talàat kàp khun ceennŋi }
khun ceennŋi paj talàat kàp khun mǽrŋi }
6. khun cǒon paj roonrían }
khun cim paj roonrían }

Pattern 3

raw phŷut phaasǎa
aṅkrít kan

khruu lé nákrían phŷut
phaasǎa thaj kan

khun cǒon lé khun
cim phŷut phaasǎa
jǽraman kan

khun kàp phŷan phǒm
rúucàk kan

khun mǽrŋi lé khun
ceennŋi paj talàat
kan

khun cǒon kàp khun
cim paj roonrían
kan

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. khon nán phûut phaasǎa araj
dâj bâan

kháw phûut phaasǎa ankrít,
farànsèet, lé thaj | What languages does
that person speak?

He speaks English,
French, and Thai. |
| 2. khon nán phûut phaasǎa araj

kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj | What language does
that person speak?

He speaks Thai. |
| 3. thîinîi mii khraj
thîinîi mii nákrían | Who is here?
There are students here. |
| 4. thîinîi mii khraj bâan
thîinîi mii khruu, nákrían lé
nákphaasǎa | Who is here?
There are teachers,
students, and linguists. |
| 5. naj eesia mii prathêet araj bâan

naj eesia mii prathêet india, ciin,
jîipùn, thaj lé prathêet òyn òyn | What are some of the
countries in Asia?

In Asia there are India,
China, Japan, Thailand,
and other countries. |
| 6. naj júróop mii prathêet araj bâan

naj júróop mii prathêet farànsèet,
sapeen, italîi, jæraman, lé
prathêet òyn òyn | What are some of the
countries in Europe?

In Europe there are
France, Spain, Italy,
Germany, and other
countries. |

7. naj ameerikaa mii rát araj bâan
What are some of the states in America?

naj ameerikaa mii rát njuu jóok,
In America there are
mesachusèt, michiksen, khelifoonia,
the states of New York,
lé rát yyn yyn.
Massachusetts, Michigan,
California, and other
states.
8. thfi sàhàprachaachâat mii khon
What are some of the nationalities in the U.N.?
châat araj bâan
In the U.N. there are
thfi sàhàprachaachâat mii khon ankrít
Englishmen, Frenchmen,
farànseèt, khon eesia lé châat yyn
Asians, and other
yyn
nationalities.
9. khun tham araj pen bâan
What do you know how to do?
phôm khĩan lé phûut phaasǎa
I can write and speak
ankrít pen
English.
10. kháw tham araj pen baân
What does she know how to do?
kháw tham aahǎan lé lían dèk pen
She can cook and take care of children.
11. kháw kèn araj baân
What things is he good at?
kháw rian nǎnsǎy kèn, lèn kiilaa
He's a good student,
kèn lé thamnaan kèn
a good athlete, and
a good worker.

THAI BASIC COURSE

d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
an̄krìt	kháw phûut phaasăa araj What language does he speak?	kháw phûut phaasăa an̄krìt He speaks English.
thaj lé an̄krìt	kháw phûut phaasăa araj bâaŋ What languages does he speak?	kháw phûut phaasăa thaj lé an̄krìt He speaks Thai and English.
nákrian	naj hôŋnán mii khraj Who's in that room?	mii nákrian Students.
khruu lé nákrian	naj hôŋnán mii khraj bâaŋ Who is in that room?	mii khruu lé nákrian Teachers and students.
lăaj châat	thîi sahàprachaachâat mii khon châat araj bâaŋ What nationalities are there at the U.N.?	mii khon châat lăaj châat There are many.
thîithamŋaan	wanníi khun ca paj năj Where are you going today?	paj thîithamŋaan To the office.
talàat, prajsanii	wanníi khun ca paj năj bâaŋ Where (all) are you going today?	paj talàat lé prajsanii To the market and the Post Office.
khəlifoŋnia, njuujók, floridâa	naj ameerikaa mii rát araj bâaŋ What are some of the states in America?	mii rát khəlifoŋnia njuujók lé floridâa California, New York and Florida

THAI BASIC COURSE

thaj, ciin, jġipùn, lé prathêet ỳyn ỳyn	naj eesia mii prathêet araj bâan What are some of the countries in Asia?	mii prathêet thaj, ciin, jġipùn, lé prathêet ỳyn ỳyn Thailand, China, Japan, etc.
phránakhoon, ubon, chianmaj	myan thaj mii canwàt araj bâan What are some of the provinces in Thailand?	mii canwàt phránakhoon, ubon, lé chianmaj Phranakorn, Ubol, and Chiangmai.
chianmaj, ùttaradit	phâak nÿa mii canwàt araj bâan What are some of the provinces in Northern Thailand?	mii canwàt chianmaj lé ùttaradit Chiangmai and Uttaradit.
ubon lé udoon	phâak isăan mii canwàt araj bâan What are some of the provinces in N. E. Thailand?	mii canwàt ubon lé udoon Ubol and Udorn.
krunthêep	khon phâak klaan phûut phaasăa araj What language do Central Thai speak?	khâw phûut phaasăa krunthêep Bangkok Thai.
krunthêep lé pàk tâj	khon pàk tâj phûut phaasăa araj bâan What languages do Southern (Thai) people speak?	khâw phûut phaasăa krunthêep lé phaasăa pàk tâj Bangkok Thai and Southern Thai.

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
nákrian	<u>nákrian</u> hâa khon	5 students
khruu	<u>khruu</u> hâa khon	5 teachers
nỳn	khruu <u>nỳn</u> khon	1 teacher
mố	<u>mố</u> nỳn khon	1 doctor
hòk	mố <u>hòk</u> khon	6 doctors
chaaw ameerikan	<u>chaaw ameerikan</u> hòk khon	6 Americans
síp	chaaw ameerikan <u>síp</u> khon	10 Americans
thahǎan bòk	<u>thahǎanbòk</u> síp khon	10 soldiers
rốj	thahǎanbòk <u>rốj</u> khon	100 soldiers
khon	(<u>khon</u>) rốj khon	100 people

f) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
lǎaj	nákrian <u>lǎaj</u> khon	many students
khruu	<u>khruu</u> lǎaj khon	many teachers
lǎaj síp	khruu <u>lǎaj síp</u> khon	many tens of teachers
thahǎan	<u>thahǎan</u> lǎaj síp khon	many tens of soldiers
phátthanaakoון	<u>phátthanaakoון</u> lǎaj síp khon	many tens of community Development workers

THAI BASIC COURSE

lǎaj rǎoj	phátthanaakoon <u>lǎaj</u> <u>rǎoj</u> khon	many hundreds of Community Develop- ment workers
khâarâatchakaan thaj	<u>khâarâatchakaan thaj</u> lǎaj rǎoj khon	many hundreds of Thai government employees
lǎaj phan	khâarâatchakaan thaj <u>lǎaj</u> <u>phan</u> khon	many thousands of Thai government employees

g) Substitution Drill

MODEL:	A: khun sýy <u>nánsýy</u> rýkhráp	'You bought some books?'
	B: khráp	'Yes, I did.'
	A: (sýy) kii lêm khráp	'How many?'
	B: <u>hòk</u> lêm khráp	'Six.'

Pairs of students are to go through the exchange above substituting the following cue words for those underlined and making other changes where appropriate:

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. naalikaa, nỳn | 5. phěenthîi, sîi |
| 2. dinsǎo, sǎam | 6. nánsýyphim, hâa |
| 3. pàakkaa, sǎon | 7. rûup, cèt |
| 4. kâwîi, sîp | 8. samùt, kâw |

Repeat the drill above using khǎaj and mii for sýy .

h) Substitution Drill

MODEL: A:	nákrian paj rýplàaw	'Did the students go?'
B:	paj khráp	'Yes, they did.'
A:	(paj) kîi khon khráp	'How many (went)?'
B:	<u>hòk</u> khon khráp	'Six.'

Substitute the following cue words for the underlined words above:

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. khruu, 3 | 5. tamrùat, 40 |
| 2. mǎo, 11 | 6. khâarâatchakaan, 25 |
| 3. chaaw ameerikaan, 5,000 | 7. phôokháa, 100 |
| 4. thahǎanbòk, 5,000 | |

i) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
khruu	<u>khruu</u> baan khon	some teachers
jîi-síp sǎoŋ	khruu <u>jîi-síp sǎoŋ</u> khon	22 teachers
síp pèet	khruu <u>síp pèet</u> khon	18 teachers
sîi-síp	khruu <u>sîi-síp</u> khon	40 teachers
hòk-síp cèt	khruu <u>hòk-síp cèt</u> khon	67 teachers
sǎam rǎoŋ	khruu <u>sǎam rǎoŋ</u> khon	300 teachers
kâw-síp èt	khruu <u>kâw-síp èt</u> khon	91 teachers
sǎam-síp sîi	khruu <u>sǎam-síp sîi</u> khon	34 teachers
nóoŋ	khruu <u>nóoŋ</u> khon	few teachers
thúk	khruu <u>thúk</u> khon	every teacher

THAI BASIC COURSE

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. roonrian thîi khun rian mii khruu phaasăa thaj lăaj khon
The school you're studying at has many Thai language teachers.
2. khâarâatchakaan thîi ca paj myanthaj tōon rian phaasăa thaj
Government employees that are going to Thailand must study Thai.
3. năkrian thîi rian thîinîi pen khon ameerikan..
Students who study here are Americans.
4. khon thîi tham râatchakaan rîak wăa khâarâatchakaan.
People who do government work are government employees.
5. khon thîi jùu bēan nán pen phyan phǒm
The people who live in that house are my friends.
6. phūujǐn thîi paj kàp khun sǔaj
The girl who goes with you is pretty.
7. khon thîi ca rian phaasăa dâj dīi tōon phūut phaasăa nán samǎe
People who are going to learn a language well must speak it constantly.

THAI BASIC COURSE

k) Expansion Drill (Combine Sentences 1 and 2 and form Sentence 3.)

<u>Sentence 1</u>	<u>Sentence 2</u>	<u>Sentence 3</u>
bâan sǔaj the house is pretty	thîi khun jùu that you live in	bâan thîi khun jùu sǔaj The house you live in is pretty.
nǎnsǔy dii book is good	thîi khun sýy that you bought	nǎnsǔy thîi khun sýy dii The book you bought is is good.
roonrian dii school is good	thîi khǎw khǎej rian that he used to study (at)	roonrian thîi khǎw khǎej rian dii The school he used to study at is good.
nǎnsǔy dii book is good	thîi khǎw khǎan that he wrote	nǎnsǔy thîi khǎw khǎan dii The book he wrote is good.
rǎanaahǎan dii restaurant is good	thîi khun bòok that you told (about)	rǎanaahǎan thîi khun bòok dii The restaurant that you told (me about) is good.
caṇwàt dii province is good	thîi khun ca paj that you are going (to)	caṇwàt thîi khun ca paj dii The province you are going to is good.

THAI BASIC COURSE

mii khruu thaj lăaj	thîi khun rian	mii khruu thaj lăaj khon
khon thîi roonrian		thîi roonrian thîi khun
		rian

There are many Thai teachers at the school.	that you study (at)	There are many Thai teachers at the school where you study at.
---	------------------------	--

rót sŭaj	thîi phŭujĩn	rót thîi phŭujĩn khonnán
	khonnán khàp	khàp sŭaj
car is pretty	that that woman is driving	The car that woman is driving is pretty.

1) Sentence Combination Drill (Combine sentences 1, 2, 3 to form sentence 4.)

Sentences 1, 2, 3

1. kháw pen khruu
kháw sŏn phaasăathaj
kháw pen khonthaj
2. kháw pen phŭujĩn
kháw paj kàp khun
kháw sŭaj
3. kháw pen nákrían
kháw rian thîinĩi
kháw pen khon ameerikan

Sentence 4¹

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| khruu thîi sŏn phaasăathaj
pen khonthaj | phŭujĩn thîi paj kàp khun sŭaj |
| nákrían thîi rian thîinĩi pen
khon ameerikan | |

¹The student may give an acceptable response which differs from the one given here.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>4. kháw pen nákrían
 kháw jáak phûut phaasǎa
 tǎan prathêet kèn
 kháw tǎon phûut samǎe</p> | <p> nákrian thîi jáak phûut phaasǎa
 tǎanprathêet kèn tǎon phûut
 samǎe</p> |
| <p>5. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan
 krasuan tǎanprathêet
 kháw ca paj myan thaj
 kháw tǎon rian phaasǎathaj</p> | <p> khâarâatchakaan krasuan
 tǎanprathêet thîi ca paj myan
 thaj tǎon rian phaasǎathaj</p> |

m) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. thîi kháw khǎan that he wrote	nǎnsǎy lêm nǎj dīi Which book is good?	lêm thîi kháw khǎan The one he wrote.
2. thîi chǎy phimphee who is named Pimpa	phûujǎn khon nǎj sǎaj Which woman is pretty?	khon thîi chǎy phimphee The one named Pimpa.
3. thîi maa càak juusít who came from USIS	nákrian khon nǎj kèn Which student is smart?	khon thîi maa càak juusít The one from USIS.
4. thîi khun sòn hâj phǎm that you sent me	pàakkaa dâam nǎj dīi Which pen is good?	dâam thîi khun sòn hâj phǎm The one you sent me.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | | |
|----|--|---|--|
| 5. | thîi kamlaŋ phûut
who is speaking | khun thăawoon, khon
năj
Which person is
Thaworn? | khon thîi kamlaŋ
phûut
The one who is
speaking. |
| 6. | thîi phûut rew
that speaks fast | khun mæsrîi, khon năj
Which person is
Mary? | khon thîi phûut rew
The one who speaks
fast. |
| 7. | thîi thamŋaan thîi
juusôm
who works at
USOM | khun coon, khonnăj
Which person is
John? | khon thîi thamŋaan
thîi juusôm
The one who works
at USOM. |

11.3 EXERCISES

- a) Find out what some of the activities are that students engage in with their wives, friends, and others.
- b) Ask questions about the number of various kinds of objects (windows, pencils, etc.) there are in your classroom.
- c) Ask and answer questions concerning the number of people employed in various institutions (egs. State Department, etc.)
- d) Ask and answer questions about the following:
 1. countries in Asia and Europe
 2. provinces in Thailand
 3. cities in the U.S., and in Thailand
 4. nationalities in the U.N., in Asia, in Europe, and in Thailand
 5. provinces and cities in various parts of Thailand

- e) Find out how many people in the classroom have various skills, such as the ability to drive a car, play tennis, etc.
- f) Find out which objects in the classroom are considered to be good by other students.
- g) The instructor will put problems in addition on the board beginning with easy ones and proceeding to more difficult ones, thus

6 + 7 = ? The students are to read the problems and supply the correct answers.

11.4 VOCABULARY

eesia	Asia
ỳyn ỳyn	other, others, other ones
bòok	to tell
cèt	seven
chán	class, rank, grade, floor (in a building)
floridâa	Florida
hâa	five
hòk	six
hòk-síp	sixty
jàak	to want to
jfi-síp	twenty
kâaw	nine
kâw-síp	ninety
kâw-síp èt	ninety one
khelifoonia	California
kìi	how many, how much (question word)
kiilaa	sport(s), athletics

THAI BASIC COURSE

lǎaj	many, several
láan	million
lě	and
líaj dèk	to take care of children, to raise children
michikɛɛn	Michigan
mɛsachusèt	Massachusetts
mýyn	ten thousand
naj	in, inside
nákphaasǎa	linguistic scientist
nóoj	few
nỳn (nyɲ)	one
pèet	eight
phan	thousand
phimphaa	Pimpa (female first name)
rew	fast, soon
róoj	hundred
sàhàprachaachâat	The United Nations
sǎam	three
sǎam-síp	thirty
sěɛn	hundred thousand
sii-síp	forty
síp	ten
thánmòt	altogether
thâwraj	how many, how much (question word)
thîinân	there
tôn	must, have to

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWELVE

12.0 BASIC DIALOG: My Family

- A: khun mii phîinóon lăaj
khon máj khráp Do you have many brothers
and sisters?
- B: khun phôo khun mĕe phôm
mii lûuk nĕa khon khráp My parents have five children.
- A: khun pen khon thĕi
thĕwràj Which are you?
- B: phôm pen khon klaan
mii phĕichaaaj sŏon khon,
nŏonŕăaw sŏon khon I'm the middle one.
There are two older brothers,
two younger sisters.
- A: phĕichaaaj khŏon khun
tĕnŕaan rýjan Are your older brothers
married (yet)?
- B: tĕn léew khon nyn, ĩik
khon nyn jan pen sòot One is married, and one is
(still) single.
- A: khŏothŏot léew khun la
khráp And you?
- B: phôm mii khrŏopkhrua
léew khráp I have a family.
- A: khŏothŏot, khun mii bùt
rýplăaw khráp Do you have children?
- B: mii khon diaw khráp
pen phŭuchaaaj I have only one.
He's a boy.
- A: aajú thĕwràj khráp How old is he?
- B: hòk khùap khráp Six.

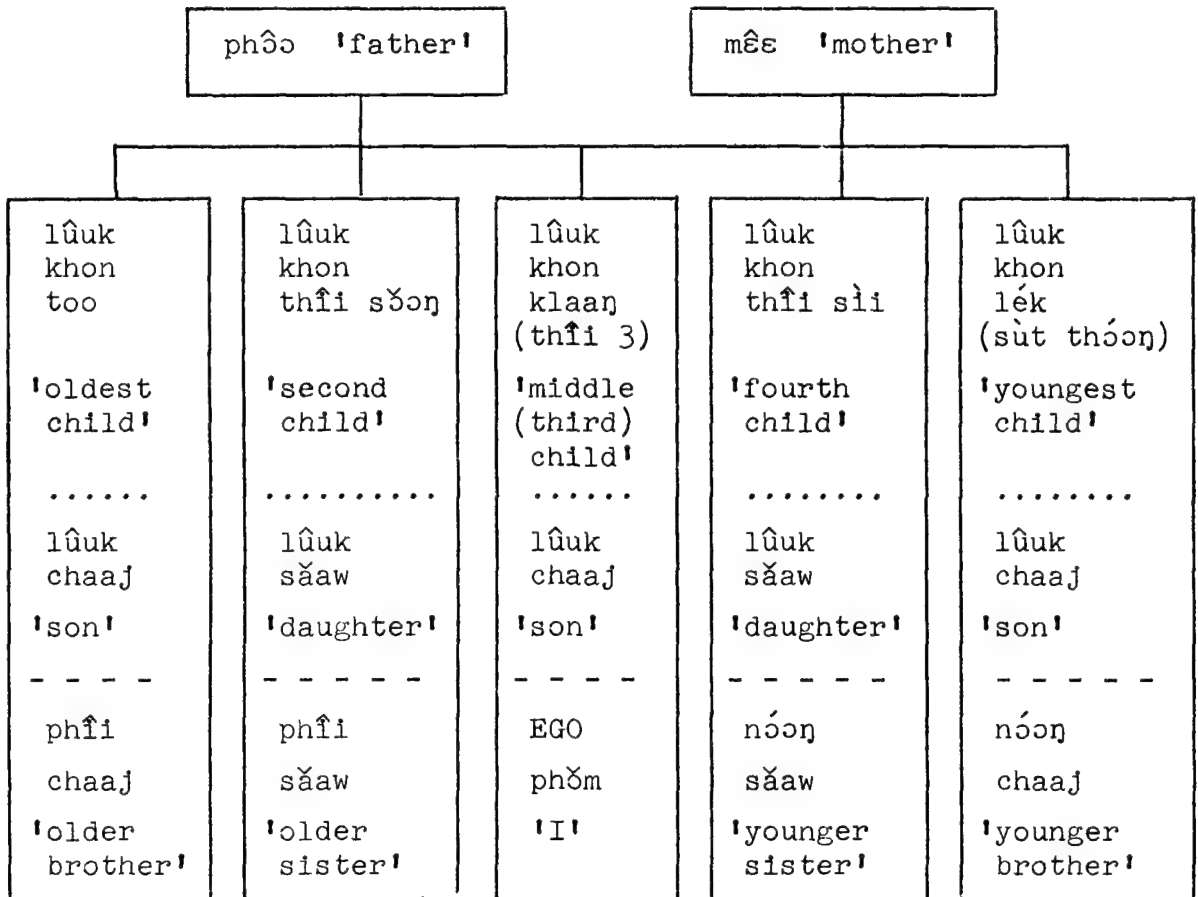
THAI BASIC COURSE

12.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) The chart below gives the terms used in Thai for different members of the immediate family in terms of age, sex, and relationship to the speaker (Ego):

khŕŏpkhrua phŏm

'My Family'



- nŏŋ alone means: 'younger brothers and/or sisters'

phĭi alone means: 'older brothers and/or sisters'

phĭinŏŋ alone means: 'older and younger brothers and/or sisters'

2. bùt = lûuk 'child' bùt is more elegant;
lûuk is more common.

3. lûuk khon nyṇ means 'a child'
lûuk nyṇ khon means 'one child'
lûuk khon diaw means 'only one child'.

b) tèṇṇaan 'to marry'; tèn 'decorate, adorn' + ṇaan 'ceremony' tèṇ is a verb and ṇaan is its noun complement. In responses to questions only the verb is necessary.

12.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Ordinal number constructions consist of thîi + cardinal numbers (or question word replacements for them)¹.

<u>thîi</u> <u>sîi</u>	'fourth'	:	<u>thîi</u> + <u>sîi</u>	'4'
<u>thîi</u> <u>cèt</u>	'seventh'	:	<u>thîi</u> + <u>cèt</u>	'7'
<u>thîi</u> <u>nyṇ</u> <u>róoj</u>	'hundredth'	:	<u>thîi</u> + <u>nyṇ</u> <u>róoj</u>	'100', etc.
<u>thîi</u> <u>thâwràj</u>	'the how manyeth'	:	<u>thîi</u> + <u>thâwràj</u>	'how many'

b) rêek means 'to be first in time, quality, in a series or sequence, or from point of origin.'

phǒm pen lûuksîi khon 'I was his first student.'
rêek khǒṇ kháw

thîi nyṇ refers to the first item in a numbered series of lessons, floors (in a building), etc.

chán thîi nyṇ 'the first floor'
 bòt thîi nyṇ 'lesson one'

- c) Ordinal numbers occur immediately after classifiers and in construction with them.

lûuk <u>khon</u> <u>thîi</u> <u>săam</u>	'the third child'
nănsŷy <u>lêm</u> <u>thîi</u> <u>cèt</u>	'the seventh book'

- d) aajú 'age' is a noun and is used in equational sentences like the following:

<u>Noun Phrase</u>	=	<u>Noun Phrase</u>
kháw		aajú jfî-síp pii
'He	(is)	20 (age-20-year).'

In questions aajú thâwràj is used generally for asking someone's age but aajú kîi pii may be used for younger persons. The response is usually (number of years) + pii but for persons under 12, (number of years) + khuap is used.

For example:

Q: lûuk khon lék aajú kîi pii 'How old is your youngest?'

A: hòk khuap '(He's) six.'

Q: khun phôo khun aajú thâwràj 'How old is your father?'

A: hâa-síp săam pii '53'

- e) lésw rý jan 'or not yet?' is used in questions to find out the state of an action (complete or not complete). lésw is often omitted or occurs in reduced form in lýjan or léjan. It may occur as yjan or éjan in very rapid speech. The responses to it are either:

1. jan 'not yet' (or) 2. Verb + lésw 'Action completed'.

Q: khun thaان khâaw lésw rýjan 'Have you eaten yet?'

R: Negative: jan kháp 'No.' (lit. 'not yet.')

Affirmative: thaان lésw kháp '(Yes), I have.'

f) Observe the use of jaŋ māj and jaŋ māj dāj in the examples below:

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. kháw jaŋ jùu thîini.. | 'She's still here. |
| kháw <u>jaŋ māj</u> paj. | 'She hasn't gone yet.' |
| 2. phǒm khít wâa kháw paj | 'I thought he had gone |
| thurá lěw tề kháw | on business already, |
| <u>jaŋ māj dāj</u> paj | but he hadn't.' |

The meaning of the first example is 'He hasn't gone yet (because he doesn't want or need to), but he may go yet'. The meaning of the second example is 'He could (or should) have gone, but he didn't. (See 5.2a).

g) When classifier phrases with diaw or lǎaj refer to the pronoun subject of the sentence, they occur after the main verb, usually at the end of the sentence.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| kháw paj <u>khon diaw</u> | 'He went by himself.' |
| kháw paj kan <u>lǎaj khon</u> | 'Several of them went together.' |

12.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1. kháw pen phîichaj phǒm | He is my older brother. |
| 2. thâan pen khun phôo phǒm | He is my father. |
| 3. kháw pen khun phôo phûujĩn khon nán | He's that girl's father. |

Pattern 2

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| phǒm pen nóonchaaj kháw | I am his younger brother. |
| phǒm pen lûukchaaj thâan | I am his son. |
| phûujĩn khon nán pen lûuksăaw kháw | That girl is his daughter. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>4. kháw pen nóonchaaj phǒm
 He is my younger brother.</p> | <p>phǒm pen phǐichaaaj kháw
 I'm his older brother.</p> |
| <p>5. kháw pen nóonsǎaw phǒm
 She's my younger sister.</p> | <p>phǒm pen phǐichaaaj kháw
 I'm her older brother.</p> |
| <p>6. kháw pen nóonsǎaw dichán
 She is my younger sister.</p> | <p>dichán pen phǐisǎaw kháw
 I'm her older sister.</p> |
| <p>7. kháw pen phǐisǎaw phǒm
 She's my older sister.</p> | <p>phǒm pen nóonchaaj kháw
 I'm her younger brother.</p> |
| <p>8. kháw pen phǐichaaaj phǒm
 He's my older brother.</p> | <p>phǒm pen nóonchaaj kháw
 I'm his younger brother.</p> |
| <p>9. kháw pen nóonchaaj dichán
 He's my younger brother.</p> | <p>dichán pen phǐisǎaw kháw
 I'm his older sister.</p> |
| <p>10. thâan pen khun mĕe phǒm
 She's my mother.</p> | <p>phǒm pen lûukchaaj thâan
 I'm her son.</p> |

b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
too	kháw pen lûuk khon <u>too</u>	He's the oldest child.
sǒon	kháw pen lûuk khon thĭi <u>sǒon</u>	She's the second child.
rĕek	kháw pen lûuk khon <u>rĕek</u>	He's the first child.
sǎam	kháw pen lûuk khon thĭi <u>sǎam</u>	She's the third child.
klaan	kháw pen lûuk khon <u>klaan</u>	He's the middle child.
hâa	kháw pen lûuk khon thĭi <u>hâa</u>	He's the fifth child.
lék	kháw pen lûuk khon <u>lék</u>	She's the smallest child. (youngest)

THAI BASIC COURSE

sii	kháw pen lûuk khon thîi <u>sii</u>	He's the fourth child.
cèt	kháw pen lûuk khon thîi <u>cèt</u>	She's the seventh child.
too	kháw pen lûuk khon <u>too</u>	He's the oldest child.

c) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. sǎam	lûukchaaj khon thîi thâwràj Which son (is it)?	(lûukchaaj) khon thîi <u>sǎam</u> The third.
2. sii	nákrian khon thîi thâwràj Which student (is it)?	(nákrian) khon thîi <u>sii</u> The fourth.
3. hòk	khruu khon thîi thâwràj Which teacher (is it)?	(khruu) khon thîi <u>hòk</u> The sixth.
4. sǒɔŋ	mǔɔ khon thîi thâwràj Which doctor (is it)?	(mǔɔ) khon thîi <u>sǒɔŋ</u> The second.
5. sǎam	chaawnaa khon thîi thâwràj Which farmer (is it)?	(chaawnaa) khon thîi <u>sǎam</u> The third.
6. nỳn	nánsǎy lêm thîi thâwràj Which book (is it)?	(nánsǎy) lêm thîi <u>nỳn</u> The first.
7. sǒɔŋ	pàakkaa dâam thîi thâwràj Which pen (is it)?	(pàakkaa) dâam thîi <u>sǒɔŋ</u> The second.
8. pèet	rót khan thîi thâwràj Which car (is it)?	(rót) khan thîi <u>pèet</u> The eighth.

9. cèt kradaat phèn thîi thâwràj (kradaat) phèn thîi cèt
 Which sheet of paper The first.
 (is it)?
10. nỳn bòtnán bòt thîi thâwràj (bòtnán) bòt thîi nỳn
 Which lesson (is it)? The first.

d) Response Drill

1. lék kháw pen lûuk khon thîi kháw pen lûuk khon lék
 thâwràj
 Which child is he? He's the youngest (child).
2. too kháw pen lûukchaaj khon kháw pen lûukchaaj khon
 thîi thâwràj too
 Which son is he? He's the oldest (son).
3. klaan khun pen lûuk khon thîi phôm pen lûuk khon klaan
 thâwràj
 Which child are you? I'm the middle child.
4. too kháw pen lûuksăaw khon kháw pen lûuksăaw khon
 thîi thâwràj too
 Which daughter is she? She's the oldest daughter.
5. lék khun pen lûukchaaj khon phôm pen lûukchaaj khon
 thîi thâwràj lék
 Which son are you? I'm the youngest son.
6. klaan dèk khon nán pen lûuk khon dèk khon nán pen lûuk khon
 thîi thâwràj khǒon kháw klaan khǒon kháw
 Which of his children That child is his
 is that child? middle child.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>7. lék dèk khonníi pen nǒɔŋ khon
 thîi thâwràj khǒɔŋ kháw
 Which of his younger
 siblings is this child?</p> | <p>dèk khonníi pen nǒɔŋ
 khon lék khǒɔŋ kháw
 That child is the
 youngest of his
 siblings.</p> |
| <p>8. too khun pen lôuk khon thîi
 thâwràj
 Which child are you?</p> | <p>phǒm pen lôuk khon too
 I'm the oldest (child).</p> |

e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. phǒm pen <u>lôuksìt khon rêek</u>
 khǒɔŋ kháw</p> | <p>I was his first student.</p> |
| <p>2. kháw pen <u>khruu phaasǎathaj khon</u>
 <u>rêek</u> khǒɔŋ éf-és-aj</p> | <p>She was the first Thai
 teacher at FSI.</p> |
| <p>3. nǎŋsǎy lêm níi pen <u>nǎŋsǎy lêm</u>
 <u>rêek</u> thîi kháw khǎan</p> | <p>This book was the first
 book he wrote.</p> |
| <p>4. rôt khan níi pen <u>rôt khan rêek</u>
 khǒɔŋ phǒm</p> | <p>This car is my first car.</p> |
| <p>5. phaasǎathaj pen phaasǎa
 tǎanprathêet <u>phaasǎarêek</u>
 thîi phǒm rian</p> | <p>Thai is the first foreign
 language I studied.</p> |
| <p>6. kháw pen <u>khon rêek</u> thîi phǒm
 rúucàk</p> | <p>He is the first person
 I met.</p> |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>7. mǎo khon nán pen mǎo khon rĕ̌k
náj caŋwàt níi</p> | <p>That doctor was the first
doctor in this province.</p> |
| <p>8. prathaanaathípbadīi wǎochintān
pen prathaanaathípbadīi khon
rĕ̌k khǎoŋ ameerikaa</p> | <p>President Washington was
the first American
president.</p> |

f) Response Drill

<u>Cues</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. phǔujǐŋ khonnán kīi pii	phǔujǐŋ khonnán aajú kīi pii How old is that woman?	kháw aajú sǐp hòk pii She's 16.
2. khun phǎo khun, thāwràj (50)	khun phǎokhun aajú thāwràj How old is your father?	thāan aajú nāa sǐp pii He's 50.
3. phǃan khun, thāwràj (30)	phǃan khun aajú thāwràj How old is your friend?	kháw aajú sǎam-sǐp pii She's thirty.
4. phǃichaaŋ khun, thāwràj (29)	phǃichaaŋ khun aajú thāwràj How old is your older brother?	kháw aajú jǃi-sǐp kāw pii He's 29.
5. lǔukchaaŋ khun, kīi khàap (2)	lǔukchaaŋ khun aajú kīi khàap How old is your son?	kháw aajú sǎoŋ khàap He's 2.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| 6. nǒɔŋsǎaw khun,
thâwràj (10) | nǒɔŋsǎaw khun aajú
thâwràj | kháw aajú sǐp
khùap |
| | How old is your
sister? | She's 10. |

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | | | |
|----------------------|---|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. kháw mii lûuk | { | khon diaw
khon nyn
nyn khon | He has <u>only one</u> child.
He has <u>a</u> child.
He has <u>one</u> child. |
| 2. kháw mii phanraja | { | khon diaw
khon nyn
nyn khon | He has only one wife.
He has a wife.
He has one wife. |
| 3. phǒm mii nánsǎy | { | lêm diaw
lêm nyn
nyn lêm | I have only one book.
I have a book
I have one book. |
| 4. phǒm mii pàakkaa | { | dâam diaw
dâam nyn
nyn dâam | I have only one pen.
I have a pen.
I have one pen. |
| 5. kháw mii nákrían | { | khon diaw
khon nyn
nyn khon | He has only one student.
He has a student.
He has one student. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

h) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. diaw	kháw mii lûuk kîi khon How many children does he have?	kháw mii lûuk khon diaw He has only one child.
2. lăaj	kháw mii phŷan kîi khon How many friends does he have?	kháw mii phŷan lăaj khon He has many friends.
3. diaw	kháw mii năŋsŷy kîi lêm How many books does he have?	kháw mii năŋsŷy lêm diaw He has only one book.
4. diaw	kháw sŷy samùt kîi lêm How many notebooks did he buy?	kháw sŷy samùt lêm diaw He bought only one notebook.
5. lăaj	kháw rúucàk khon thaj kîi khon How many Thais does he know?	kháw rúucàk khon thaj lăaj khon He knows many Thais.
6. diaw	kháw rúucàk khon aŋkrìt kîi khon How many Englishmen does he know?	kháw rúucàk khon aŋkrìt khon diaw He knows only one Englishman.
7. diaw	kháw paj kàp khraj Who did he go with?	kháw paj khon diaw He went by himself.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>8. lăaj kháw paj kàp khraj
 Who did they go with?</p> | <p>kháw paj <u>kan</u> lăaj khon
 Several of them went together.</p> |
| <p>9. diaw kháw thaen khâaw kàp khraj
 Who does he eat with?</p> | <p>kháw thaen khon diaw
 He eats alone.</p> |

1) Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u> |
|---|--|
| 1. chây cîm, coon | khon nyn <u>chây cîm</u> , ìik khon nyn chây <u>coon</u>
One person is named Jim; another, John. |
| 2. pen thaj, ameerikan | khon nyn <u>pen thaj</u> , ìik khon nyn pen <u>ameerikan</u>
One person is Thai; another, American. |
| 3. pen khruu, thahăan | khon nyn <u>pen khruu</u> , ìik khon nyn pen <u>thahăan</u>
One person is a teacher; another, a soldier. |
| 4. pen phîi, nŏon | khon nyn <u>pen phîi</u> , ìik khon nyn pen <u>nŏon</u>
One is an older sibling; another is a younger sibling. |
| 5. sŭaj, māj sŭaj | khon nyn <u>sŭaj</u> , ìik khon nyn <u>māj sŭaj</u>
One person is pretty; another, not. |
| 6. kèn, māj kèn | khon nyn <u>kèn</u> , ìik khon nyn <u>māj kèn</u>
One person is skillful; another isn't. |
| 7. phŭut phaasăa
an̄krìt dāj,
māj dāj | khon nyn <u>phŭut phaasăa an̄krìt dāj</u> ,
ìik khon nyn phŭut <u>māj dāj</u>
One person can speak English; another can't. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|--|
| 8. jùu myan thaj,
jùu ameerikaa | khon nyn <u>jùu myan thaj</u> , ìik khon nyn <u>jùu ameerikaa</u>
One person is in Thailand; another in America. | |
| 9. tènnaan léew
jan pen sòot | khon nyn <u>tènnaan léew</u> , ìik khon nyn <u>jan pen sòot</u>
One person is married; another is still single. | |
| 10. paj léew, jan jùu | khon nyn <u>paj léew</u> , ìik khon nyn <u>jan jùu</u>
One person has gone; another is still here. | |

j) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. cim, coon	sǒɔŋ khon nán cȟy araj What are those two people named?	cȟy <u>cim</u> khon nyn, ìik khon nyn cȟy <u>coon</u> One is named Jim, the other John.
2. tèn léew, jan pen sòot	nóɔŋchaaj khun tènnaan léew rýjan Are your younger brothers married yet?	<u>tèn léew</u> khon nyn, ìik khon nyn <u>jan pen sòot</u> One is; one isn't.
3. pen mǎɔ, pen khâarâatchakaan	pȟyan khun sǒɔŋ khon nán thamnaan araj khráp What do your two friends do for a living?	<u>pen mǎɔ</u> khon nyn, ìik khon nyn <u>pen khâarâatchakaan</u> One's a doctor; the other a government employee.

4. phûut dâj sǎon khon nán phûut phûut dâj khon nyn
 phûut mâj dâj phaasăa ankrít dâj ìik khon nyn phûut
 máj mâj dâj

5. dii, mâj dii nánssǎy sǎon lêm nán dii lêm nyn, ìik
 dii máj lêm nyn mâj dii
 Are those two One is good; the
 books good? other isn't.

k) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

1. rúucàk phŷan phǎm khun rúucàk phŷan phǎm lésw rýjan khráp
 Have you met my friend yet?
2. kháw rúucàk kháw rúucàk phŷan phǎm lésw rýjan khráp
 Has he met my friend yet?
3. paj thamnaan kháw paj thamnaan lésw rýjan khráp
 Has he gone to work yet?
4. phûut phaasăa kháw phûut phaasăa thaj dâj lésw rýjan khráp
 thaj dâj Can he speak Thai yet?
5. khun khun phûut phaasăa thaj dâj lésw rýjan khráp
 Can you speak Thai yet?
6. sýy nánssǎy khun sýy nánssǎy lésw rýjan khráp
 Have you bought the books yet?

7. thaan khâaw khun thaan khâaw léew rýjaŋ khráp
 Have you eaten yet?
8. mii khrôpkhrua khun mii khrôpkhrua léew rýjaŋ khráp
 Do you have a family yet?
9. àan náŋsýy lêm nán khun àan náŋsýy lêm nán léew rýjaŋ khráp
 Have you read that book yet?
10. rian bòt thfi síp khun rian bòt thfi síp léew rýjaŋ khráp
 Have you studied lesson 10 yet?

1) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. yes	khun rian bòt thfi síp léew rýjaŋ khráp Have you studied lesson 10 already?	rian léew khráp Yes, we have.
2. no	khun thaان khâaw léew rýjaŋ khráp Have you eaten yet?	jaŋ khráp Not yet.
3. yes	khâw paj thamŋaan léew rýjaŋ khráp Has he gone to work yet?	paj léew khráp Yes, he has.
4. no	khun sôŋ khon rúucàk kan léew rýjaŋ khráp Have you two met yet?	jaŋ khráp Not yet.
5. no	khâw mii náŋsýy léew rýjaŋ khráp Does he have the books yet?	jaŋ khráp Not yet.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|--|---------------------------------|
| 6. | yes | thīnān aakàat nǎaw rýjaŋ
Is it cold there yet? | nǎaw léew khráp
Yes, it is. |
| 7. | no | khun phūut kàp kháw léew rýjaŋ khráp
Have you spoken with him yet? | jaŋ khráp
Not yet. |
| 8. | yes | khun phūut phaasǎa thaj dǎj léew rýjaŋ
khráp
Can you speak Thai yet? | dǎj léew
Yes, I can. |
| 9. | no | khun khǎan phaasǎa thaj dǎj léew rýjaŋ
khráp
Can you write Thai yet? | jaŋ khráp
Not yet. |
| 10. | yes | kháw khàp rót pen léew rýjaŋ khráp
Does he know how to drive yet? | pen léew khráp
Yes, he does. |
| 11. | no | kháw wǎaj nám pen léew rýjaŋ
Can he swim yet? | jaŋ khráp
Not yet. |

m) Transformation Drill (Add a negative statement with jaŋ to the affirmative statement.)

- | <u>Affirmative Statement</u> | <u>Negative Statement</u> |
|---|---|
| 1. phǒm maa léew
I've come already | tèe kháw jaŋ mǎj maa
but he hasn't yet. |
| 2. phǒm mii nánsǎy léew
I have books already | tèe kháw jaŋ mǎj mii
but he doesn't yet. |
| 3. phaasǎa thaj phǒm dīi léew
My Thai's good already | tèe phaasǎa thaj khǒŋ kháw jaŋ
mǎj dīi
but his isn't yet. |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. khun kèn lếw
You are already good
(at something) | tề kháw jaŋ māj kèn
but he isn't yet. |
| 5. phỏm khềj paj myaŋ thaŋ lếw
I've already been to Thailand | tề kháw jaŋ māj khềj
but he hasn't yet. |
| 6. phỏm khàp rỏt pen lếw
I already know how to drive | tề kháw jaŋ māj pen
but he doesn't yet. |
| 7. phỏm rúucàk khun lếw
I've already met you | tề kháw jaŋ māj rúucàk
but he hasn't yet. |

n) Substitution Drill

Cue

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. klàp bāan | kháw jaŋ māj <u>klàp bāan</u>
He hasn't gone home yet. |
| 2. khềj thaan
aahǎan thaŋ | kháw jaŋ māj <u>khềj thaan aahǎan thaŋ</u>
He hasn't ever eaten Thai food. |
| 3. kèn | kháw jaŋ māj <u>kèn</u>
He isn't good (at doing something) yet. |
| 4. phũut phaasǎathaŋ | kháw { <u>phũut phaasǎa thaŋ</u> jaŋ māj kèn
jaŋ <u>phũut phaasǎa thaŋ</u> māj kèn
He doesn't speak Thai well yet. |
| 5. pen | kháw jaŋ māj <u>pen</u>
He doesn't know how to do it yet. |

6. wâaj nám pen

kháw { wâaj nám jan mâj pen
 { jan wâaj nám mâj pen

He doesn't know how to swim yet.

7. dâj

kháw jan mâj dâj

He is unable to do it yet.

8. paj thamnaan dâj

kháw { jan paj thamnaan mâj dâj
 { paj thamnaan jan mâj dâj

He is unable to go to work yet.

o) Transformation Drill (Add a negative statement with
 jan mâj dâj to the affirmative
 statement.)

Affirmative Statement

Negative Statement

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. phǒm khít wâa kháw paj lésw
I thought he had gone already, | tèe kháw jan mâj dâj paj
but he hadn't. |
| 2. phǒm khít wâa kháw tham lésw
I thought he had already done it, | tèe kháw jan mâj dâj tham
but he hadn't. |
| 3. phǒm khít wâa kháw rian bòt níi lésw
I thought he had already
studied this lesson, | tèe kháw jan mâj dâj rian
but he hadn't. |
| 4. phǒm khít wâa kháw thaen lésw
I thought he had already eaten, | tèe kháw jan mâj dâj thaen
but he hadn't. |
| 5. phǒm khít wâa kháw pen kǒnsǔn lésw
I thought he was already the
consul, | tèe kháw jan mâj dâj pen
but he wasn't. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. phǒm khit wāa kǎw sǎon khun léew tɛɛ kǎw jaŋ māj dāj sǎon
I thought he had already taught
it to you, but he hadn't.
7. phǒm khit wāa kǎw àan nǎnsǎy lɛm tɛɛ kǎw jaŋ māj dāj àan
nǐi léew
I thought he had already read
this book, but he hadn't.
8. phǒm khit wāa kǎw phim còtmǎaj tɛɛ kǎw jaŋ māj dāj phim
léew
I thought he had already typed
the letter , but he hadn't.
9. phǒm khit wāa kǎw sǎy nǎnsǎy lɛm tɛɛ kǎw jaŋ māj dāj sǎy
nǎn léew
I thought he had already
bought that book , but he hadn't.
10. phǒm khit wāa kǎw faŋ théep an tɛɛ kǎw jaŋ māj dāj faŋ
nǐi léew
I thought he had already listened
to this tape , but he hadn't.

p) Sentence Construction Drill

One student forms a sentence like Sentence 1 and another forms a question like Sentence 2 from the cues given. The first student answers the question.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Sentence 1</u>	<u>Sentence 2</u>
1. paj sòn còtmǎaj	phǒm jan mǎj dǎj paj sòn còtmǎaj I haven't mailed the letters yet.	khun jan mǎj dǎj paj sòn còtmǎaj rěkháp Haven't you mailed the letters yet?
2. thaان aahǎan klaanwan	phǒm jan mǎj dǎj thaان aahǎan klaanwan I haven't eaten lunch yet.	khun jan mǎj dǎj thaان aahǎan klaanwan rěkháp Haven't you eaten lunch yet?
3. kèn	phǒm jan mǎj kèn I'm not good yet.	khun jan mǎj kèn rěkháp Aren't you good yet?
4. phûut phaasǎathaj	phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj jan mǎj dǎj (phǒm jan phûut phaasǎa thaj mǎj dǎj) I can't speak Thai yet.	khun phûut phaasǎa thaj jan mǎj dǎj rěkháp Can't you speak Thai yet?
5. rûucàk kháw	phǒm jan mǎj rûucàk kháw I haven't met her yet.	khun jan mǎj rûucàk kháw rěkháp Haven't you met her yet?

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. sýy náŋsýy	phǒm jaŋ mâj dâj sýy náŋsýy	khun jaŋ mâj dâj sýy náŋsýy rěkháp
	I haven't bought books yet.	Haven't you bought books yet?

12.4 EXERCISES

- a) Make up a family chart (like the one in 12.1) for each member of the class and the tutor.
- b) Ask questions about each member of the family in order to find out the following information:
 1. name
 2. age
 3. present and past occupations
 4. residence
 5. place of work
 6. travel experience
 7. languages spoken
 8. skill in sports and other activities
- c) If some of the people in the class have children, find out the name, sex, and age of them.

12.5 VOCABULARY

aahǎan klaaŋwan	lunch, noontime meal
aajú	age (in years)
an	classifiers of things
bòt (bòt)	lesson (in a textbook)
bùt (khon)	child (elegant usage) (one's direct descendant)
dèk (khon)	child (immature person)

díaw	one only, only
jaŋ	still, not yet
khan	classifier for cars, and other vehicles
khít	to think
khon klaaŋ	the middle one (of children)
khon lék	the youngest one (of children)
khon sùt thóŋ	the youngest one (of children)
khon too	the oldest one (of children)
khŕôŋpkhrua	the family
(khŕôŋpkhrua)	
khùap	year (of age for people under 14 years)
khun phô	parents (polite usage)
khun mĕe (khon)	
klaaŋwan	in the daytime, by day
lék	small, little (in size)
léew	already (used to indicate completed action)
léew rý jaŋ	or not yet? (used in questions)
léew lý jaŋ	
léew lé jaŋ	
léew ý jaŋ	
léew é jaŋ	
lûuk (khon)	child (common usage, refers to one's direct descendant)
lûuksít (khon)	student, pupil
mĕe (khon)	mother
nóŋ (khon)	younger brothers and/or sisters
nóŋ chaaŋ (khon)	younger brother(s)
nóŋ sǎaw (khon)	younger sister(s)
ŋaan	ceremony

THAI BASIC COURSE

phîi (khon)	older brother(s) and/or sister(s)
phîi chaaj (khon)	older brother(s)
phîi nǎon (khon)	brother(s) and sister(s)
phîi sǎaw (khon)	older sister(s)
phôo (khon)	father
pii	year
prathaan	
aathípboodii (khon)	the president of a country
rêek	to be first
ryjaŋ	yet (question word)
sòot	to be single, unmarried
tèn	to decorate, adorn (the verb in <u>tèn naan</u>)
tèn naan	to marry, to get married, to be married
thîi	form that is used with numerals to form ordinal numbers, hence <u>thîi sǎam</u> 'third', etc.
too	big, large, mature

LESSON THIRTEEN

13.0 BASIC DIALOG: Telling Time

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| A: kîi moon lếw khráp | What time is it? |
| B: hâa moon cháaw kwàa lếw khráp | It's after 11 a.m. |
| naalikaa khốo khun weelaa | What time is it |
| thâwràj khráp | by your watch? |
|
A: naalikaa phỏm ìik hâa naathii | By my watch it's five |
| ca hâa moon cháaw | minutes to 11 a.m. |
| B: naalikaa khun cháa paj síp hâa | Your watch is fifteen |
| naathii khráp | minutes slow. |
|
A: nán, phỏm hẻn ca tồn ríp | In that case, it seems |
| paj dĩawníi | I will have to hurry. |
| B: khun ca ríp paj nắj khráp | Where are you hurrying to? |
| A: ca paj aw nẻn thỉi thanaakaan | I'll go get some money at |
| kỏon, lếw ca paj prajsanii | the bank first, then go |
| | to the Post Office. |
| B: ca klàp mỷaràj khráp | When will you return? |
|
A: tỏon bàaj bàaj khráp | Sometime in the afternoon. |

13.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) kwàa 'more than, to a greater extent or degree'

hâa moon cháaw kwàa lếw

(11 (lit. 5) o'clock a.m. more than already)

'It's after 11 a.m.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) khryŋ 'half'

sɔŋ moon cháaw khryŋ
(8 [lit. 2]) o'clock a.m. half [hour]

'8:30 a.m.'

c) tron 'exactly, sharp (of time)'

hâa moon cháaw tron
(11 [lit. 5]) o'clock a.m. sharp)

'11 a.m. sharp'

13.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) ik... ca is used to indicate time in the future.

ik	Period of Time	ca	Clock Time
ik (additional	hâa naathii 5 minutes	ca will be	săam moon cháaw 9 a.m.)
'It's five minutes to 9 a.m.'			

b) To indicate the extent of error of a timepiece the following construction is used:

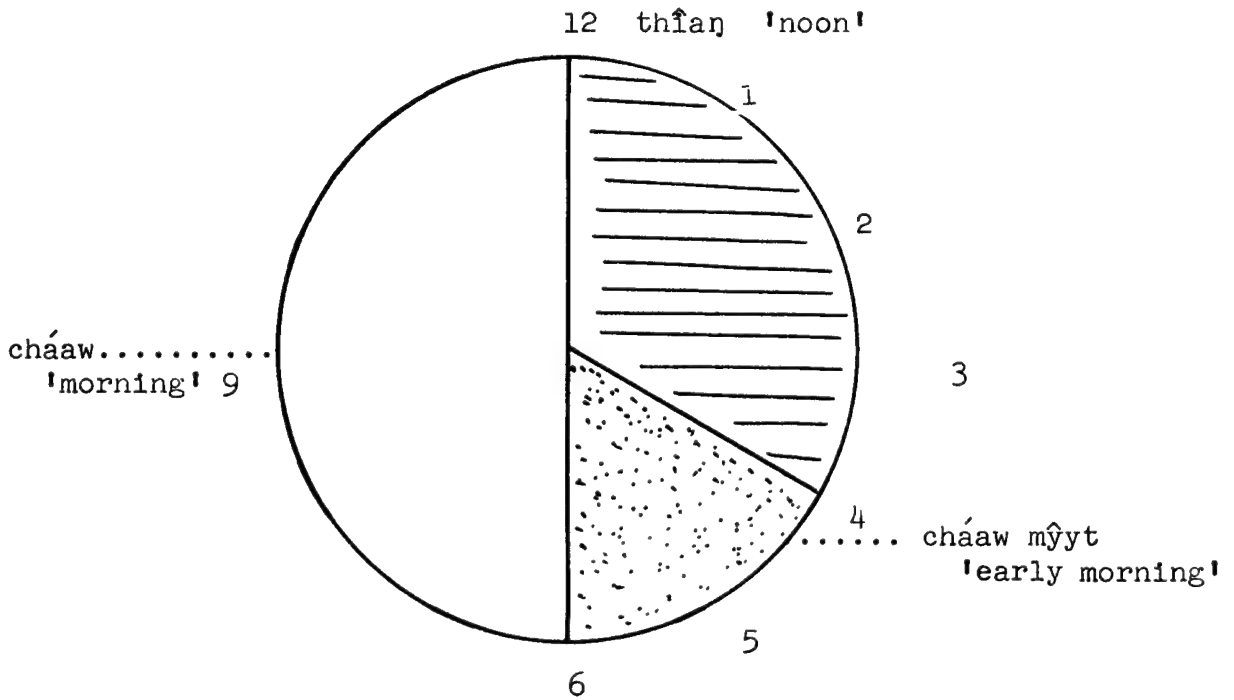
Direction of Error	Excess	Amount of Time
cháa / rew (slow / fast	paj too much	hâa naathii 5 minutes)
'(It's) five minutes slow/fast.'		

THAI BASIC COURSE

13.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

klaanwan 'daytime'



cháaw:	hòk moon cháaw	' 6 a.m.'	cháaw mýt:	tii sǐi '4 a.m.'
	moon cháaw ¹	' 7 a.m.'		tii hâa '5 a.m.'
	sǒn moon cháaw	' 8 a.m.'		
	sǎam moon cháaw	' 9 a.m.'		
	sǐi moon cháaw	'10 a.m.'		
	hâa moon cháaw	'11 a.m.'		
	thian	'noon'		

¹Bangkok speakers prefer moon cháaw, but many other persons say cèt moon cháaw.

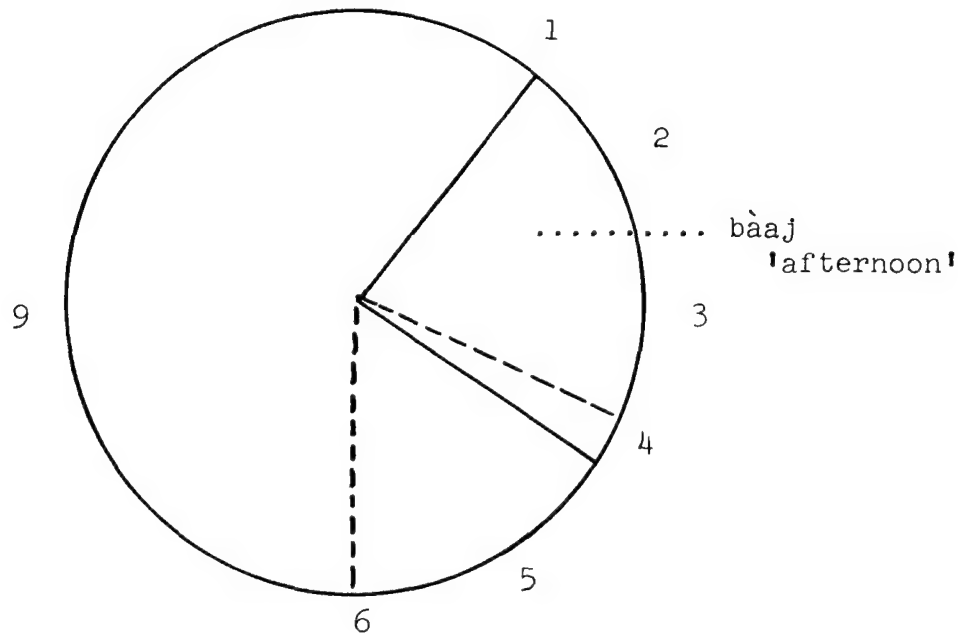
Note to the Instructor: A real clock or a facsimile clock face should be used in performing many of the drills in this lesson.

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

klaanwan 'daytime'

12 thian 'noon'



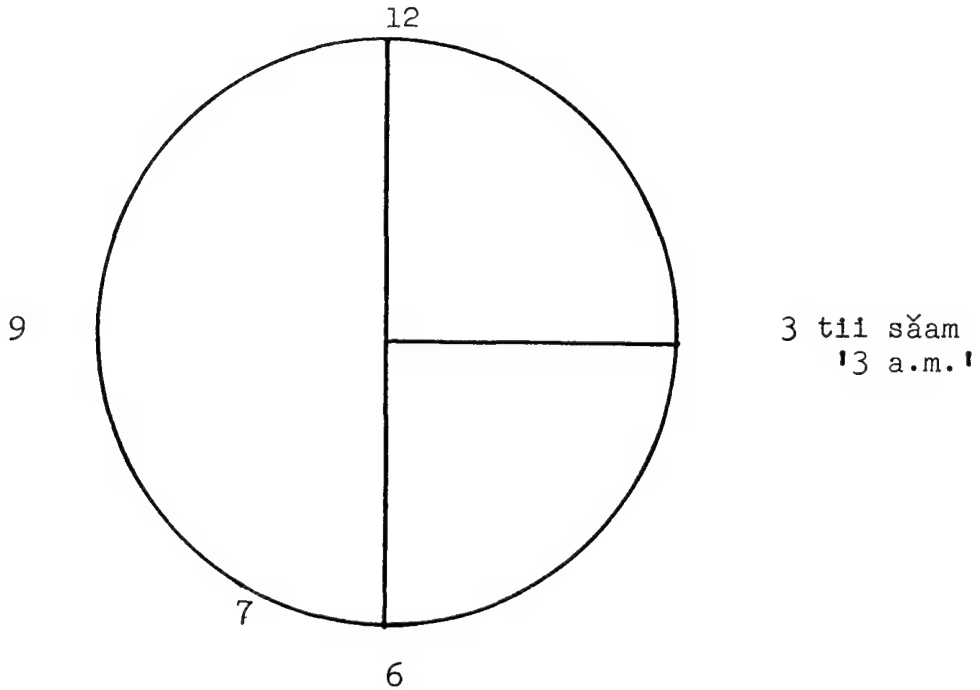
bàaj:	bàaj moon	'1 p.m.'
	bàaj sǎam moon	'2 p.m.'
	bàaj sǎam moon	'3 p.m.'
	bàaj sìi moon	'4 p.m. ¹ '
jən:	sìi moon jən	'4 p.m.'
	hāa moon jən	'5 p.m.'
	hòk moon jən	'6 p.m.'

¹Both bàaj sìi moon and sìi moon jən are used for 4 p.m.

THAI BASIC COURSE

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

klaaṅkhyyn 'nighttime'



nỳṅ thûm	' 7 p.m. '
sǎṅ thûm	' 8 p.m. '
sǎam thûm	' 9 p.m. '
sǐi thûm	'10 p.m. '
hâa thûm	'11 p.m. '
thīaṅ khyyn	'12' (midnight)
tii nỳṅ	' 1 a.m. '
tii sǎṅ	' 2 a.m. '
tii sǎam	' 3 a.m. '

THAI BASIC COURSE

d) Response Drill (Point at the time on the clock face.)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. 11 a.m.	kìi moon léew khráp What time is it?	hâa moon cháaw léew khráp 11 a.m.
2. 9 a.m.	kìi moon léew khráp What time is it?	săam moon cháaw khráp 9 a.m.
3. 10 a.m.	kìi moon léew khráp What time is it?	sìi moon cháaw khráp 10 a.m.
4. 12 a.m.	kìi moon léew khráp What time is it?	thîan léew khráp It's noon.
5. 1 p.m.	kìi moon léew khráp What time is it?	bàaj moon khráp 1 p.m.
6. 3 p.m.	kìi moon léew khráp What time is it?	bàaj sām moon khráp 3 p.m.
7. 4 p.m.	kìi moon léew khráp What time is it?	sìi moon jen khráp 4 p.m.
8. 6 p.m.	kìi moon léew khráp What time is it?	hòk moon jen khráp 6 p.m.

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. 7 p.m.	kìi thûm léew khráp What time is it?	nỳn thûm (léew) khráp 7 p.m.
2. 8 p.m.	kìi thûm léew khráp What time is it?	sỏn thûm khráp 8 p.m.
3. 10 p.m.	kìi thûm léew khráp What time is it?	sỉi thûm khráp 10 p.m.
4. 11 p.m.	kìi thûm léew khráp What time is it?	hũa thûm khráp 11 p.m.
5. Midnight	kìi thûm léew khráp What time is it?	thỉan khyyn Midnight.
6. 2 a.m.	kìi thûm léew khráp What time is it?	tỉi sỏn khráp 2 a.m.

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. tỉi sỉi sẵm naathỉi	4:03 a.m.
2. tỉi hũa sỏn naathỉi	5:02 a.m.
3. hòk moon cháaw sỏp hũa naathỉi	6:15 a.m.
4. moon cháaw jỉi-sỏp naathỉi	7:20 a.m.
5. sỏn moon cháaw khrỳn	8:30 a.m.
6. sẵm moon cháaw sỉi sỏp hũa naathỉi	9:45 a.m.
7. hũa moon cháaw tron	11:00 a.m.
8. thỉan khrỳn	12:30 p.m.
9. bàaj moon hũa-sỏp naathỉi	1:50 p.m.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------|
| 10. hâa moon jen jîi-síp hâa naathii | 5:25 p.m. |
| 11. thûm khryñ | 7:30 p.m. |
| 12. thîaŋ khyyn hâa naathii | 12:05 a.m. |

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|---|------------|
| 1. ìik jîi-síp naathii ca sǎam moon cháaw | 8:40 a.m. |
| 2. ìik síp hâa naathii ca hâa moon cháaw | 10:45 a.m. |
| 3. ìik síp sǒŋ naathii ca thîaŋ | 11:48 a.m. |
| 4. ìik cèt naathii ca bàaj moon | 12:53 p.m. |
| 5. ìik hâa naathii ca sǐi moon jen | 3:55 p.m. |
| 6. ìik pèet naathii ca hâa moon khryñ | 11:22 a.m. |
| 7. ìik jîi-síp hâa naathii ca thîaŋ khyyn | 11:35 p.m. |

h) Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u> |
|-------------------|--|
| 1. síp cèt | naalikaa phǒm cháa paj <u>síp cèt</u> naathii
My watch is seventeen minutes slow. |
| 2. khun | naalikaa <u>khun</u> cháa paj síp cèt naathii
Your watch is 17 minutes slow. |
| 3. khryñ chûamoon | naalikaa khun cháa paj <u>khryñ chûamoon</u>
Your watch is half an hour slow. |
| 4. jîi síp sǒŋ | naalikaa khun cháa paj <u>jîi-síp sǒŋ</u> naathii
naathii
Your watch is 22 minutes slow. |
| 5. phǒm | naalikaa <u>phǒm</u> cháa paj jîi-síp sǒŋ naathii
My watch is 22 minutes slow. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

1) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| 1. kâaw | naalikaā phǒm rew paj <u>kâaw</u> naathii |
| | My watch is 9 minutes fast. |
| 2. khrŷŋ chûamoon | naalikaā phǒm rew paj <u>khrŷŋ chûamoon</u> |
| | My watch is half an hour fast. |
| 3. kháw | naalikaā <u>kháw</u> rew paj khrŷŋ chûamoon |
| | His watch is half an hour fast. |
| 4. sĭp hâa naathii | naalikaā kháw rew paj <u>sĭp hâa naathii</u> |
| | His watch is 15 minutes fast. |

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (Parts of the Day)

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. toon cháaw | 5 a.m. to 9:00 a.m. ¹ |
| 2. toon sǎaj | 9 a.m. to 11:59 a.m. |
| 3. toon thĭan | 12 a.m. to 12:50 p.m. |
| 4. toon bàaj | 1 p.m. to 4:00 p.m. |
| 5. toon jen | 4 p.m. to 6:30 p.m. |
| 6. toon khâm | From 6:30 p.m. until around midnight |
| 7. toon hŭakhâm | 6:30 p.m. to 9 p.m. |
| 8. toon dĭk | 10:00 p.m. to 3 a.m. |

1. Time periods are approximate only.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- k) Transformation Drill Change from one pattern to the other.

toon cháaw ¹	weelaa cháaw
toon sǎaj	weelaa sǎaj
toon thĭan	weelaa thĭan
toon bàaj	weelaa bàaj
toon jen	weelaa jen
toon khâm	weelaa khâm

- 1) Transformation Drill (Change from Pattern 1 to Pattern 2.)

Pattern 1: cháaw 'In the morning'
 toon cháaw

Pattern 2: cháaw cháaw 'Sometime in the morning'
 toon cháaw cháaw

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
toon cháaw In the morning.	toon cháaw cháaw Sometime in the morning.
toon sǎaj In the late morning.	toon sǎaj sǎaj Sometime in the late morning.
toon thĭan At noon.	toon thĭan thĭan Sometime around noon.

¹The meaning of these two patterns is the same.
They are given in drill 'j'

THAI BASIC COURSE

toon bàaj	toon bàaj bàaj
In the afternoon.	Sometime in the afternoon.
toon jen	toon jen jen
In the late afternoon.	Sometime in the late afternoon.
toon khâm khâm	toon khâm khâm
In the evening.	Sometime in the evening.
toon dỳk	toon dỳk dỳk
Late at night.	Sometime late at night.

m) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. toon bàaj bàaj	khun ca klàp mỳaràj When will you return?	(klàp) toon bàaj bàaj khráp Sometime in the afternoon.
2. toon khâm khâm	khun ca duu nànsǎy mỳaràj When will you study?	(duu) toon khâm khâm khráp In the evening.
3. toon thian thian	khun ca thaان khâaw mỳaràj When will you eat?	(thaan) toon thian thian khráp Sometime around noon.
4. toon jen jen	khun ca paj baan khâw mỳaràj When will you go to his house?	(paj) toon jen jen khráp Sometime in the late afternoon.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| 5. tɔɔn bàaj | khun ca paj aw nɛən
m̃yàràj
When will you go
get the money? | (paj) tɔɔn bàaj
khráp
In the afternoon. |
| 6. tɔɔn h̃aa moon
cháaw | khun ca paj sòn
ph̃yan m̃yàràj
When will you see
your friend off? | (paj) tɔɔn h̃aa
moon cháaw
At 11 a.m. |
| 7. tɔɔn jen jen | khun ca w̃aaj nám
m̃yàràj
When will you
go swimming? | (w̃aaj) tɔɔn jen
jen khráp
Sometime late in
the afternoon. |
| 8. tɔɔn d̃ỹk | kháw maa m̃yàràj
When did he come? | (maa) tɔɔn d̃ỹk
Late at night. |
| 9. m̃yawaanníi | kháw paj m̃yàràj
When did he go? | (paj) m̃yawaanníi
Yesterday. |
| 10. m̃ya bàaj s̃ɔɔn
moon | kháw paj m̃yàràj
When did she go? | (paj) m̃ya bàaj
s̃ɔɔn moon
At 2 p.m. |
| 11. m̃ya kíiníi | kháw ph̃út kàp khun
m̃yàràj
When did he speak
to you? | (ph̃út) m̃yákíiníi
A short time ago. |

n) Transformation Drill

Observe the following examples:

- A: bàaj níi 'this afternoon' (Present or future time)
 m̂ya bàaj níi 'this afternoon' (Past time)
- B: khyynníi 'tonight' (Present or future time)
 m̂ya khyynníi 'tonight' (Past time)

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. jenníi
this afternoon | m̂yajenníi
this afternoon |
| 2. bàaj sǎam moon
3 p.m. | m̂ya bàaj sǎam moon
3 p.m. |
| 3. cháawníi
this morning | m̂yacháawníi
this morning |
| 4. khâmníi
this evening | m̂yakhâmníi
this evening |
| 5. thîaṇníi
this noon | m̂yathîaṇníi
this noon |
| 6. sìi moon jen
4 p.m. | m̂ya sìimoon jen
4 p.m. |
| 7. sǎam moon cháaw
9 a.m. | m̂ya sǎam moon cháaw
9 a.m. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

o) Substitution Drill

Using the cues given form pairs of sentences like the following with léew as the connective:

Cue: paj aw nən, paj prajsanii

Sentences: ca paj aw nən kòn, léew ca paj prajsanii

I'll get the money (first), then go
to the Post Office.

Cue

Pattern

1. paj aw nánsǎy
paj hônrían

ca paj aw nánsǎy kòn, léew ca paj
hônrían

I'll get a book first, then
go to the classroom.

2. paj thaán khâaw
paj duu nǎn

ca paj thaán khâaw kòn, léew ca paj
duu nǎn

I'll eat first, then go to
the movies.

3. paj fan théep,
paj hônsamùt

ca paj fan théep kòn, léew ca paj
hônsamùt

I'll listen to tapes first,
then go to the library.

4. paj talàat,
paj bâan

ca paj talàat kòn, léew ca paj bâan
I'll go to the market, then home.

5. paj jùu krunthêep,
jùu tàançanwàt

ca paj jùu krunthêep kòn, léew ca paj
jùu tàançanwàt

I'll go live in Bangkok first,
then go live in the provinces.

THAI BASIC COURSE

p) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. thĭaŋ	thĭaŋ rýjaŋ Is it noon yet?	jaŋ mâj <u>thĭaŋ</u> Not yet.
2. bàaj	bàaj rýjaŋ Is it afternoon yet?	jaŋ mâj <u>bàaj</u> Not yet.
3. khâm	khâm rýjaŋ Is it evening yet?	jaŋ mâj <u>khâm</u> Not yet.
4. dỳk	dỳk rýjaŋ Is it late (at night) yet?	jaŋ mâj <u>dỳk</u> Not yet.
5. cháaw	cháaw rýjaŋ Is it morning yet?	jaŋ mâj <u>cháaw</u> Not yet.

13.4 EXERCISES (Use a cardboard clock face with movable hands with the following exercises.)

- a) Set the hands on the clock face. One student asks what time it is and another responds according to the position of the hands.
- b) Set the hands on the clock face, then ask different students what time it will be in ten minutes, twenty minutes, one hour, etc.
- c) One student asks another what time it is by his watch; when he responds, the first student says that his watch is slow or fast by a certain number of minutes according to the time indicated by the classroom clock.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- d) Set the clock hands. Student A announces the time indicated. Student B asks Student C if it is (part of the day) (toon bàaj, toon jen, etc.) yet. Student C responds either (1) that it is, or (2) that it isn't yet according to the time announced by Student A.
- e) Concerning the activities listed below, find out from other students:
1. If they did any of them yesterday, and if so, at what time;
 2. If they will do any of them tomorrow, and if so, at what time;
 3. If they do any of them every day, and if so, at what time; and
 4. If they have done any of them yet. If the reply is that they haven't yet, find out if they will do any of them tomorrow, and if so, at what time.

Activities:

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| a) come to school | b) go mail a letter |
| c) play music | d) drive a car |
| e) go to the bank | f) drink coffee |
| g) go see a doctor | h) go for a walk |
| i) go shopping | j) go eat in a restaurant |
| k) go to work | l) write a letter |
| m) study lessons | n) play tennis |
| o) go to the market | |

13.5 VOCABULARY

aw	to get, to take
bàaj / bàaj bàaj	afternoon, o'clock used for the time 1 p.m. - 4 p.m.
cháa	late, slow
cháaw	morning, a.m.
.cháawmÿyt	early morning
chûamoon	hour (measure of Time)
dǎawníi	right now
dỳk	11 p.m. - 3 a.m.
hě̃n	to see
hě̃n ca	think
hôṇsamùt (hôṇ)	library
hũakhâm	6 p.m. - 9 p.m.
jen	evening (used for 4 p.m. - 6 p.m.)
khâm	6 p.m. - 12 a.m.
khrỹn	half
khyyn	to be night
khyynníi	tonight
klaaṇkhyyn	night time (used for 7 p.m. - 3 a.m.)
kwàa	more than, to a greater extent or degree
lé̃sw	then
moon	o'clock, time
mÿa	used for past time
mÿaràj	when, question word
mÿyt	dark
naathii	minutes
naṇ	in that case
(cháa) paj	too much

THAI BASIC COURSE

rew	early, fast
rîip	to hurry
săaj	late, the time 9 a.m. - 11:59 a.m.
thîaŋ	noon
thîaŋ khyyn	midnight
thûm	o'clock, used for 7 p.m. - 11 p.m.
tii	o'clock (for the time 1 a.m. - 5 a.m.)
toon	sometime, time, part of (something)
tron	exactly, sharp (of time)
weelaa	time

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON FOURTEEN

14.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions (1)

- | | |
|---|---|
| A: thǎəwníi mii ráantàtphǎm
máj khráp | Is there a barber shop
around here? |
| B: mii khráp, jùu fànnóon | Yes, there is. On the
other side (of the street) |
| A: jùu tronǎj khráp | Exactly where? |
| B: jùu khâaṅkhâaṅ ráankaafɛ ¹ | Next to the coffee shop |
| A: jùu thaansáaj rý thaṅkhwǎa
khráp | To the left or right? |
| B: jùu thaansáaj | To the left. |
| A: thaṅkhwǎa khǒṅ ráankaafɛ
pen araj khráp | What's to the right of
the coffee shop? |
| B: pen ráanaahǎan | A restaurant. |
| A: chýy khiinóot, chǎj máj
khráp | It's named 'Key Note'
isn't it? |
| B: mǎj chǎj khráp
ráan khiinóot jùu thǎinân | No, it isn't.
The Key Note is over there. |
| A: thanǒn thǎi jùu thaṅ khwǎa
nân chýy thanǒn araj khráp | What's the name of the
street on the right? |
| B: thanǒn nán rǎkhráp
chýy thanǒn suriwon | That street?
It's Suriwong. |

¹Bangkok is a rapidly changing city. Here today, gone tomorrow.

- A: (thanǒn suriwong) phàan
sathǎanthûut ameerikan
máj khráp Does it (Suriwong Street)
pass the American Embassy?
- B: máj phàan khráp No, it doesn't.
sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu The American Embassy is in
thěsw thanǒn phlœncít the Ploenchit street area
klâj klâj kàp sìjêek very near Ratprasong
râatprasǒn Corner.

14.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) Constructions with klâj 'near' and klaj 'far' are illustrated below:

jùu {	klaj	càak	krunthêep	'far from Bangkok'
	klâj	kàp ka- —	krunthêep	'near Bangkok'

ka can only be used after klâj when the word following begins with a consonant.

- b) The pairs of sentences below are equivalent in meaning:
- A: krunthêep jùu klaj 'Bangkok is far from
càak udǒn Udorn.'
- B: krunthêep kàp udǒn 'Bangkok and Udorn are
jùu klaj kan far apart.'

- A: sathǎanthûut ameerikan jûu klâj kàp sathǎanthûut aṅkrît 'The American Embassy is near the British Embassy.'
- B: sathǎanthûut ameerikan kàp sathǎanthûut aṅkrît jûu klâj kan 'The American Embassy and the British Embassy are close to each other.'

- c) The extent of the distance between two places can be indicated by constructions like the following:

NP ¹	Verb Phrase	NP ²	Extent of distance
krunthêep	jûu klaj càak	chianmàj	kîi kiloo
krunthêep	jûu klaj càak	chianmàj	900 kiloo
<p>'How far (how many kilometers) is Bangkok from Chiangmai?'</p> <p>'Bangkok is 900 kilometers from Chiangmai.'</p>			

- d) mii has the meaning 'to be in existence' in constructions like the one below:

Location (optional)	<u>mii</u>	NP Complement
(thěsw níi)	mii	ráantàtphǎm
'In this area (there) is a barber shop.'		

There is no subject of the sentence.

THAI BASIC COURSE

14.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drills

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. ráantàtphǒm	thěswníi mii <u>ráantàtphǒm</u> máj khráp Is there a barber shop in this area?
2. ráantàtsŷa	thěswníi mii <u>ráantàtsŷa</u> máj khráp Is there a tailor shop in this area?
3. ráankhǎaj nánsŷyphim	thěswníi mii <u>ráankhǎaj nánsŷyphim</u> máj Is there a newstand in this area? ?
4. pámnámman	thěswníi mii <u>pámnámman</u> máj khráp Is there a gas pump in this area?
5. thoorasàp sǎathaaraná	thěswníi mii <u>thoorasàp sǎathaaraná</u> máj khráp Is there a public telephone in this area?
6. ráanmǒo	thěswníi mii <u>ráanmǒo</u> máj khráp Is there a doctor's place in this area?
7. ráankhǎaj jaa	thěswníi mii <u>ráankhǎaj jaa</u> máj khráp Is there a pharmacy in this area?
8. ráanaahǎan diidii	thěswníi mii <u>ráanaahǎan dii dii</u> máj khráp Are there good restaurants in this area?

b) Progressive Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. ráantàtphǒm	thěsw nīi mīi <u>ráantàtphǒm</u> máj Are there any barber shops in the area?
2. thaang khwǎa	<u>thaangkhwǎa</u> mīi ráantàtphǒm máj Are there any barbershops to the right?
3. thīi hooten	<u>thīi hooten</u> mīi ráantàtphǒm máj Are there any barbershops at the hotel?
4. thoorasàp	thīi hooten mīi <u>thoorasàp</u> máj Are there telephones at the hotel?
5. thīinīi	<u>thīinīi</u> mīi thoorasàp máj Are there telephones here?
6. aahǎan faràng khǎaj	thīinīi mīi <u>aahǎan faràng khǎaj</u> máj Is there foreign food for sale here?
7. thīi ráan nán	<u>thīi ráan nán</u> mīi aahǎan faràng khǎaj máj Is there foreign food for sale at that shop?
8. thěsw nán	<u>thěsw nán</u> mīi aahǎan faràng khǎaj máj Is there foreign food for sale in this area?
9. ráankaafɛɛ	thěsw nán mīi <u>ráankaafɛɛ</u> máj Are there coffee shops around here?

10. klâj klâj (kàp) klâj klâj (kàp) thiithamnaan mii ráankaafes
thiithamnaan máj

c) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. pratuu náam	juusôom jùu thîinǎj khráp Where is U.S.O.M?	jùu (thîi) <u>pratuu náam</u> khráp On Pratunam.
2. doon myan	sanǎambin <u>doon myan</u> jùu thîinǎj khráp Where's Don Muang airport?	jùu thîi <u>doon myan</u> khráp At Don Muang.
3. saphaan khwaaj	roonreem kǎppitôon jùu thîinǎj khráp Where's the Capitol Hotel?	jùu (thîi) <u>saphaan</u> <u>khwaaj</u> khráp At the Water Buffalo bridge.
4. sîijêek pathumwan	sanǎam kiilaa jùu thîinǎj khráp Where's the Sports Stadium?	jùu (thîi) <u>sîijêek</u> <u>pathumwan</u> At Pathumwan Corner.
5. baan̄kapi	bāan khun jùu thîi nǎj Where's your house?	jùu <u>baan̄kapi</u> At Bangkapi.

d) Response Drill

Cue Words: bâan khun.... baan kapi

Student 1: bâan khun jùu thîinǎj Where's your house?
khráp

Student 2: jùu baankapi khráp In Bangkok.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. sanǎam kiilaa, thěew sǐjĕek pathumwan	sanǎam kiilaa jùu thîinǎj Where's the Sport Stadium?	jùu (thîi) thěew sǐjĕek pathumwan Near Pathumwan Corner.
2. juusôm, pratuunáam	juusôm jùu thîinǎj Where is USOM?	jùu thîi pratuunáam At Pratunam.
3. bâan khun, klâj klâj (kàp) anúsǎawarii	bâan khun jùu thîinǎj Where's your house?	jùu klâj klâj (kàp) anúsǎawarii Quite close to the monument.
4. roonreem kéepitôn, saphaan khwaaj	roonreem kéepitôn jùu thîinǎj Where's the Capitol Hotel?	jùu (thîi) saphaan khwaaj Near the Water Buffalo Bridge.
5. sanǎambin doon myan, doon myan	sanǎambin doon myan jùu thîinǎj Where's Don Muang Airport?	jùu (thîi) doon myan At Don Muang.

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Substitution Drill (Use street chart on next page)

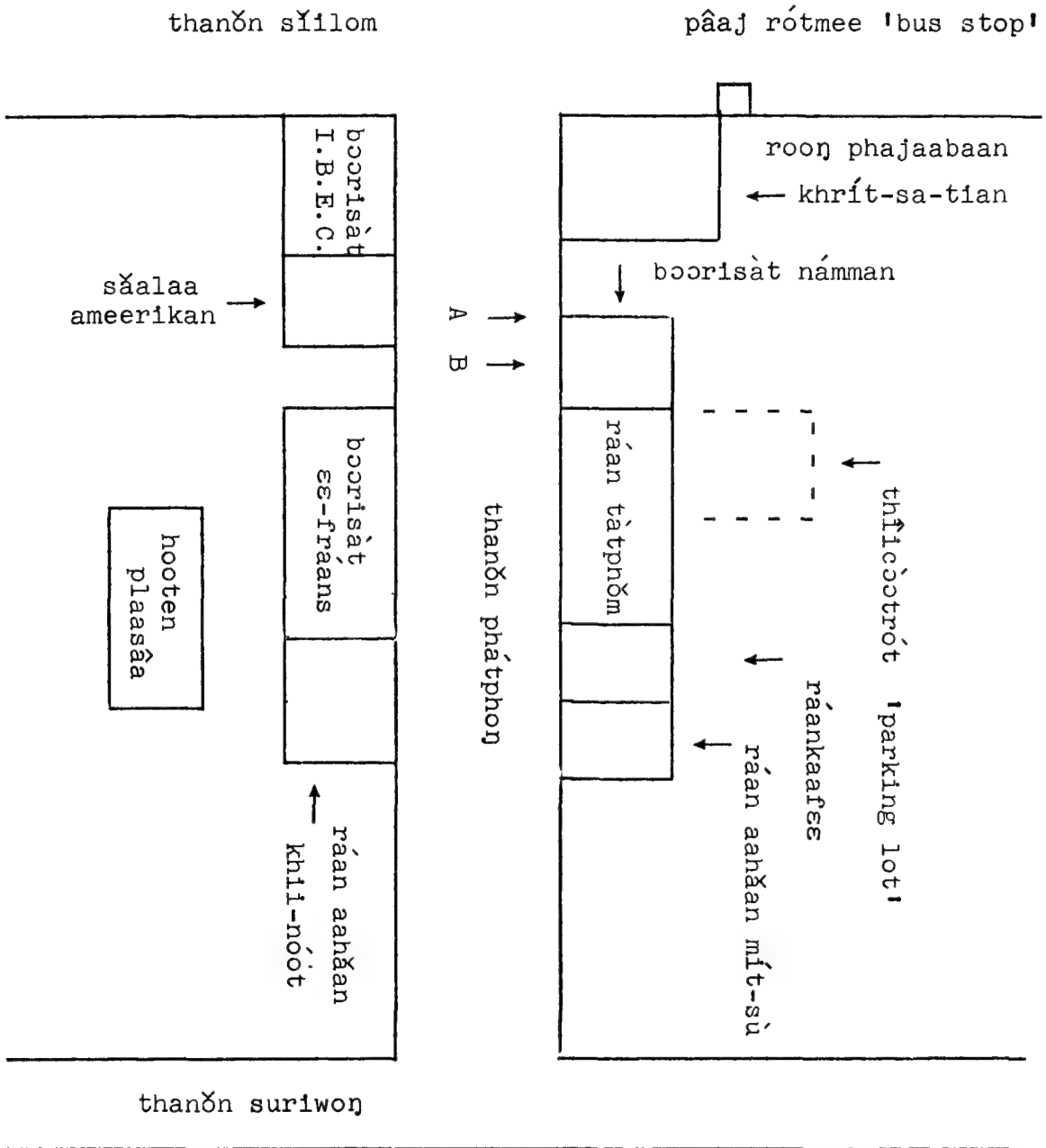
<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. khwǎa	rǎantàtphǒm jùu thaanghwǎa The barber shop is to the right.
2. ráanaahǎan	<u>ráanaahǎan</u> jùu thaanghwǎa The restaurant is to the right.
3. boorisàt námman	<u>boorisàt námman</u> jùu thaanghwǎa The oil company is on the right.
4. thanǒn suriwon	<u>thanǒn suriwon</u> jùu thaanghwǎa Suriwong street is on the right.
5. hooten plaasâa	<u>hooten plaasâa</u> jùu thaanghwǎa The Plaza Hotel is on the right.

f) Substitution Drill (Use street chart on next page)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. sǎaj	roonphajaabaan jùu thaangsǎaj The hospital is to the left.
2. thanǒn sǐilom	<u>thanǒn sǐilom</u> jùu thaangsǎaj Silom Street is to the left.
3. boorisàt aj-bèk	<u>boorisàt aj-bèk</u> jùu thaangsǎaj I.B.E.C. is on the left.

Continue the drill with additional examples from the map on the next page.

THAI BASIC COURSE



g) Expansion Drill (Combine the cue words to form place expressions)

<u>Cue:</u>	<u>Cue:</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
nŭi	thŭi	thŭiniŭi	here
nân	thŭi	thŭinân	there
nôon	thŭi	thŭinôon	way over there

h) Response Drill

Cue

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. nīi bâan khun jùu thīinǎj
Where's your house? | (bâan phǒm) jùu thīin <u>nīi</u>
It's here. |
| 2. nân sathǎanthûut jùu thīinǎj
Where's the Embassy? | (sathǎanthûut) jùu thīin <u>nân</u>
It's there. |
| 3. nôon sīijÊesk rāatprasǒŋ jùu
thīinǎj
Where's Ratprasong
Intersection? | (sīijÊesk rāatprasǒŋ) jùu
thīin <u>nôon</u>
It's way over there. |
| 4. nīi phýan khun jùu thīinǎj
Where's your friend? | (phýan phǒm) jùu thīin <u>nīi</u>
(My friend) is here. |
| 5. nân nánsýy khun jùu thīinǎj
Where's your book? | (nánsýy phǒm) jùu thīin <u>nân</u>
It's there. |
| 6. nôon rót jùu thīinǎj
Where's the car? | (rót) jùu thīin <u>nôon</u>
It's way over there. |

i) Expansion Drill (Combine the cue words to form place expressions.)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. nīi	tron	tron nīi right here
2. nán	tron	tron nán right there
3. nóon	tron	tron nóon right over there
4. nīi	thěew	thěew nīi (in) this section
5. nán	thěew	thěew nán (in) that section

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. nóon thěsw thěsw nóon (in) that section over there
7. níi fàŋ fàŋ níi (on) this side (of the street)
8. nóon fàŋ fàŋ nóon (on) the far side (of the street)

j) Response Drill (Have one student form a question from cue 1, and another respond to it using cue 2.)

<u>Cue 1</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Cue 2</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. thîi	thîinǎj Where?	nîi	thîinîi Here.
2. troŋ	troŋnǎj (Exactly) where?	níi	troŋníi Right here.
3. thěsw	thěswnǎj (in) which section?	nóon	thěswnóon (In) that section.
4. fàŋ	fàŋnǎj Which side?	níi	fàŋníi This side.
5. thîi	thîinǎj Where?	nôon	thîinôon Way over there
6. troŋ	troŋnǎj (Exactly) where?	nóon	troŋnóon Right over there.

- k) Response Drill (Have one student form a question with the first cue, and a second student respond to it using the second cue.)

Cue

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. ráanaahăan,
thaan̄khwăa | ránaahăan jùu
thîinăj
Where's the
restaurant? | ránaahăan jùu
thaan̄khwăa khráp
It's on the right. |
| 2. ráantàtphôm,
thaansáaj | rántàtphôm jùu
thîinăj
Where's the barber
shop? | rántàtphôm jùu
thaansáaj khráp
It's on the left. |
| 3. roon̄rēm eerawan,
thěsw sîijěsk
râatprasŏŋ | roon̄rēm eerawan
jùu thîinăj
Where's the Erawan
Hotel? | roon̄rēm eerawan jùu
thěsw sîijěsk râatprasŏŋ
It's Ratprasong
Corner area. |
| 4. talàat,
tron̄nŏon | talàat jùu thîinăj
Where's the market? | talàat jùu tron̄nŏon
It's right over there. |

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- sathăanthûut ameerikan jùu klaj càak krasuan̄tāan̄ prathêet.
The American Embassy is far from the Foreign Ministry.
- roon̄rēm kěep-pi-tŏon̄ jùu klaj càak cátsaměsk
The Capitol Hotel is far from JUSMAG.
- sanăambin̄ dŏon̄ myan̄ jùu klaj càak juusít
Don Muang Airport is far from USIS.

4. phii-éks jùu klaj càak juusôm
The PX is far from USOM.
5. talàat jùu klaj càak bâan phôm.
The market is far from my house.
6. sathăanii rótfaɣ jùu klaj càak bâan kháw
The R.R. station is far from his house.
7. hôn aahăan jùu klaj càak hôn rian.
The dining room is far from the classroom.

m) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. sathăanthût jùu klaj càak
krasuan tàan prathêet
The Embassy is far from
the Foreign Ministry.
2. doon myan jùu klaj càak
sathăanthût
Don Muang is far from
the Embassy.
3. roonreem orianten jùu klaj
càak roonreem eerawan
The Oriental Hotel is far
from the Erawan Hotel.

Pattern 2

- sathăanthût kàp krasuan
tàan prathêet jùu klaj kan.
The Embassy and the Foreign
Ministry are far apart.
- doon myan kàp sathăanthût
jùu klaj kan.
Don Muang and the Embassy
are far apart.
- roonreem orianten kàp roonreem
eerawan jùu klaj kan.
The Oriental Hotel and the
Erawan Hotel are far apart.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>4. bâan phǎm jùu klaj càak
bâan khun
My house is far from
your house.</p> | <p>bâan phǎm kabâan khun jùu
klaj kan
My house and your house
are far apart.</p> |
| <p>5. caṇwàt sǒṅkhlǎa jùu klaj
càak caṇwàt udorn
Songkla Province is far
from Udon Province.</p> | <p>caṇwàt sǒṅkhlǎa kàp caṇwàt
udorn jùu klaj kan
Songkla Province and Udon
Province are far apart.</p> |
| <p>6. thanǒn wítthajú jùu klaj
càak thanǒn phahǒnjoothin
Wireless Road is far from
Paholyotin Street.</p> | <p>thanǒn wítthajú kàp thanǒn
phahǒnjoothin jùu klaj kan
Wireless Road and Paholyotin
Street are far apart.</p> |

n) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. prajsanii (no)	prajsanii jùu klaj càak nǐi máj Is the Post Office far from here?	mâj klaj khráp No, it isn't.
2. krasuan tàan prathêet (yes)	krasuan tàanprathêet jùu klaj càak nǐi máj Is the Foreign Ministry far from here?	klaj khráp Yes, it is.
3. sanǎambin doon myan (no)	sanǎambin doon myan jùu klaj càak nǐi máj Is Don Muang Airport far from here?	mâj klaj khráp No, it isn't.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| 4. juusôm (yes) | juusôm jùu klaj càak
nîi mǎj
Is USOM far from here? | klaj khráp
Yes, it is. |
| 5. hôn prachum
(no) | hôn prachum jùu klaj càak
nîi mǎj
Is the auditorium far
from here? | mǎj klaj khráp
No, it isn't. |
| 6. thanakhaan
(yes) | thanakhaan jùu klaj càak
nîi mǎj
Is the bank far from here? | klaj khráp
Yes, it is. |
| 7. sathǎanii
tamrùat | sathǎanii tamrùat jùu klaj
càak nîi mǎj
Is the Police Station
far from here? | klaj khráp
Yes, it is. |
| 8. prathêet
farànsèet (yes) | prathêet farànsèet jùu klaj
càak nîi mǎj
Is France far from here? | klaj khráp
Yes, it is. |

o) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu klâj kàp roonrēm eerawan
The American Embassy is near the Erawan Hotel.
- cátsamèek jùu klâj kàp juusít.
JUSMAG is near USIS.
- sìijêek rāatprasōn jùu klâj kàp thanōn wítthajú.
The Ratprasong Intersection is near Wireless Road.

4. thonburii jùu klâj kàp krunthêep
Thonburi is near Bangkok.
5. sapòot khláp jùu klâj kàp culaa.
The Sports Club is near Chula.
6. sanăam lŭan jùu klâj kàp thammasàat
The Pramane Grounds are near Thammasart (University).
7. bân phôm jùu klâj kàp talàat
My house is near the market.

Note to the instructor: Repeat the drill using ka- for kàp.

p) Substitution Drill

Cue

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 1. talàat | bân khâw jùu klâj <u>talàat</u>
His house is near the market. |
| 2. roonphajabaan | bân khâw jùu klâj <u>roonphajabaan</u> .
His house is near the hospital. |
| 3. thanŏn sŭilom | bân khâw jùu klâj <u>thanŏn sŭilom</u>
His house is near Silom Street. |
| 4. hŏnsamùt | bân khâw jùu klâj <u>hŏnsamùt</u>
His house is near the library. |
| 5. thŭithamŋaan | bân khâw jùu klâj <u>thŭithamŋaan</u>
His house is near the office. |

6. hooten ramâa bâan kháw jùu klâj hooten ramâa
His house is near Rama Hotel.
7. thanǒn jàj bâan kháw jùu klâj thanǒn jàj
His house is near the main street.
8. roonṇaan bâan kháw jùu klâj roonṇaan
His house is near the factory.
9. tua muan bâan kháw jùu klâj tua muan
His house is near down town.

q) Sentence Formation Drill

Cue

1. talàat, thǎithamṇaan talàat jùu klâj thǎithamṇaan máj
Is the market near the office?
2. bâan khun, bâan khun bâan khun jùu klâj bâan khun thǎawoon máj
thǎawoon Is your house near Thaworn's?
3. thǎithamṇaan khun, thǎithamṇaan khun jùu klâj prajsanii máj
prajsanii Is your office near the Post Office?
4. sathǎanthûut sathǎanthûut ameerikan jùu klâj juusôm máj
ameerikan, juusôm Is the American Embassy near USOM?
5. krunthêep, ajúthajaa krunthêep jùu klâj ajúthajaa máj
Is Bangkok near Ayuthaya?
6. prathêet jǎipùn, prathêet jǎipùn jùu klâj prathêet
prathêet jǎeraman jǎeraman máj
Is Japan near Germany?

THAI BASIC COURSE

r) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. cátsamèk jùu klâj kàp
juusít

JUSMAG is near USIS.

2. sathǎanthûut óossatreelia
jùu klâj kàp sathǎanthûut
filíppin

The Australian Embassy
is near the Philippine
Embassy.

3. roonrɛɛm ammarin jùu klâj
kàp roonrɛɛm eerawan

The Amarin Hotel is near
the Erawan Hotel.

4. juusǒm jùu klâj kàp talàat
pratuunám

USOM is near the Pratunam
Market.

5. ee-juu-ee jùu klâj kàp
roonrɛɛm eerawan

A.U.A. is near the Erawan
Hotel.

6. wóochintân jùu klâj kàp
wəə-ci-nia

Washington is near Virginia.

Pattern 2

- cátsamèk kàp júusít jùu
klâj kan

JUSMAG and USIS are near
each other.

- sathǎanthûut óossatreelia kàp
sathǎanthûut filíppin jùu
klâj kan.

The Australian Embassy and
the Philippine Embassy are
near each other.

- roonrɛɛm ammarin kàp roonrɛɛm
eerawan jùu klâj kan

The Amarin Hotel and the
Erawan Hotel are near
each other.

- juusǒm kàp talàat pratuunám
jùu klâj kan

USOM and the Pratunam Market
are close together.

- ee-juu-ee kàp roonrɛɛm eerawan
jùu klâj kan

The A.U.A. and the Erawan
Hotel are close together.

- wóochintân kàp wəə-cinia jùu
klâj kan

Washington and Virginia are
close together.

s) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. ráanaahǎan jùu thaankhwǎa

The restaurant is on
the right.

2. bâan khǒɔŋ khǎw jùu thǎinôn

His house is over there.

3. talàat jùu thaansǎaj

The market is to the left.

4. prajsanii jùu tronnoon

The P.O. is right over there.

5. sathǎanthûut jùu thaansǎaj

The Embassy is to the left.

6. nánsǎy khǒɔŋkhun jùu thǎinôn

Your book is over there.

7. sǎalaa ameerikan jùu thǎi
thanôn noon

The USIS auditorium is on
the street over there.

Pattern 2

ráanaahǎan mâj dâj jùu
thaansǎaj

The restaurant is not
on the left.

bâan khǒɔŋ khǎw mâj dâj jùu
thǎinǎi

His house isn't here.

talàat mâj dâj jùu thaankhwǎa

The market is not to the right.

prajsanii mâj dâj jùu tronnǎi

The P.O. is not right here.

sathǎanthûut mâj dâj jùu
thaankhwǎa

The Embassy is not to the
right.

nánsǎy khǒɔŋkhun mâj dâj jùu
thǎinǎi

Your book isn't here.

sǎalaa ameerikan mâj dâj
jùu thǎi thanôn nǎi

The USIS auditorium is not
on this street.

t) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. ráanaahǎan jùu thaankhwǎa

The restaurant is on the right.

2. hooten jùu thaansáaj

The hotel is to the left.

3. bâan khǒɔŋkháw jùu thǎɛwnóon

His house is in the area over there.

4. rót khǒɔŋ phǒm jùu tronníi

My car is right here.

5. talàat jùu thaansáaj

The market is on the left.

Pattern 2

- ráanaahǎan jùu thaankhwǎa,
mâj chǎj thaansáaj

The restaurant is on the right. It's not on the left.

- hooten jùu thaansáaj, mâj
chǎj thaankhwǎa

The hotel is to the left. It's not to the right.

- bâan khǒɔŋkháw jùu thǎɛwnóon,
mâj chǎj thǎɛwníi

His house is in the area over there. It's not in this area.

- rót khǒɔŋ phǒm jùu tronníi,
mâj chǎj tronnoón

My car is right here.

- talàat jùu thaansáaj, mâj
chǎj thaankhwǎa

The market is on the left. It isn't on the right.

u) Transformation Drill (Change to the Negative.)

Pattern 1

1. roonrɛɛm eerawan jùu klâj
ka sathǎanthûut
The Erawan Hotel is
near the Embassy.
2. roonrɛɛm ɔɔrianten jùu klâj
ka prajsaniklaan
The Oriental Hotel is near
the Central Post Office.
3. sathǎanthûut sapeen jùu klâj
ka sathǎanthûut ameerikan
The Spanish Embassy is
near the American Embassy.
4. cátsamèɛk jùu klâj ka juusít
JUSMAG is near USIS.
5. sɭijêɛk sàpràthum jùu klâj
ka sɭijêɛk râatprasǎn
Sapratum Corner is near
Ratprasong Corner.

Pattern 2

- roonrɛɛm eerawan jùu mâj
klaj càak sathǎanthûut
The Erawan Hotel is not
far from the Embassy.
- roonrɛɛm ɔɔrianten jùu mâj
klaj càak prajsaniklaan
The Oriental Hotel is not
far from the Central Post
Office.
- sathǎanthûut sapeen jùu mâj
klaj càak sathǎanthûut
ameerikan
The Spanish Embassy is not
far from the American
Embassy
- cátsamèɛk jùu mâj klaj càak
juusít
JUSMAG is not far from USIS.
- sɭijêɛk sàpràthum jùu mâj klaj
càak sɭijêɛk râatprasǎn
Sapratum Corner is not far
from Ratprasong Corner.

14.3 EXERCISES

- a) Find out if any of the following things are in this area: barber shop, bank, restaurant, Post Office, gas pump, oil company, public telephone, pharmacy, coffee shop, hospital, railroad station, airport, police station.
- b) Starting from some particular spot (in front of a bank, etc.) find out where other buildings are in relation (to the left, right over there, etc.) to your position.
- c) Using the map following page 133, discuss what places are near each other and which are far apart in Bangkok.
- d) Using the map following page 112 discuss what provinces are near each other and which are far apart.
- e) Ask other students if particular buildings are near their homes.
- f) Ask where particular buildings are located. In the answer you will be told that they are near other buildings.

14.4 VOCABULARY

aj bək (bərɪsət)	I.B.E.C., Name of a company
ammarin	Amarin, name of a hotel in Bangkok
anúsǎwariɪ (hən)	monument
ɛɛ fráans	Air France, name of an airline
ɔɔrianten	Oriental, name of a hotel in Bangkok
baaŋkapi	Bangkapɪ (section of Bangkok)
bɔɔrisət	company
bɔɔrisət námman	Oil Company
fàn	side (of the street/river/canal/sea)
hôn aahǎan (hôn)	dining room
hooten	hotel

jaa	medicine
jàj	big, large
kéepitôon	The Capitol (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
khâan	next to (something or someone), side
khiinóot	keynote (name)
khrítsatian	Christian (name of a hospital)
klaj	to be far
klâj	to be near, close
mít su	Mitsu (name of a restaurant)
pâaj (pâaj)	poster, sign, tag
pâaj rótmeem (pâaj)	bus stop
pámnámmann	a gas pump
pathumwan	Patoomwan, (section of Bangkok)
phàan	to pass, to go past
phahônjoothin	Phaholyotin Street in Bangkok
plaasâa	Plaza, name of a hotel in Bangkok
prajsanii klaan	The Central Post Office
pratuunám	Pratunam (name of the section in Bangkok)
ráankhăaj-	
nânsŷyphim (ráan)	a newstand
ráan khăajjaa (ráan)	a pharmacy
ráanmăo (ráan)	a doctor's office
ráantàtphôm (ráan)	a barber shop
ráantàtsŷa (ráan)	a tailor shop
râatprasôn	Ratprasong (section of Bangkok)
roonŋaan (roon)	factory
rótmeem (khan)	bus
săalaa ameerikan	the USIS Auditorium
săathaaraná	public (not private)
sanăam (hên)	field, yard, lawn

THAI BASIC COURSE

sanăam kilaa (hèn)	the sports stadium
sanăam lŭaŋ (hèn)	the Pramane Grounds in Bangkok
saphaan (saphaan, an)	bridge (a structure)
saphaan khwaaj (saphaan, an)	the Water Buffalo Bridge (name of a bridge in Bangkok)
sàpràthum	Saprathum (name of the corner and section in Bangkok)
sathăanii tamrùat (hèn)	police station
sìijêek	corner
sīilom	Silom (name of the street in Bangkok)
thaaŋ	way, path, direction, means
thaaŋ khwăa	to the right
thaaŋsáaj	to the left
thanŏn jàj	the main street
thīi	at
thīi còot rôt (thīi)	parking lot
thīinôn	way over there
thěew	section, district (of a town)
thonburii	Thonburii, Name of a province in Thailand, used to be the capital during the year 1767 through 1782
tron	right, exactly
tron (năj)	(exactly) where

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON FIFTEEN

15.0 BASIC DIALOG: An Interview at Korat.

- A: sawàtdii khráp, phǒm chýy thoom Hello, my name is Tom.
B: phǒm chýy méen khráp My name is Maen.
- A: jindii thîi dâj rúucàk Glad to meet you.
B: khun pen thahǎan rǎkhráp You're a soldier, aren't you?
- A: plàaw khráp No, I'm not.
 phǒm pen phonlaryan I'm a civilian.
B: khun phûut phaasǎa thaj kèn mâak You speak Thai very well.
- A: khòopkhun khráp Thank you.
B: khun maa tham araj thîini khráp What did you come here to do?
- A: phǒm maa thamjaan thîi juusít To work at USIS.
 khráp
- B: khǒothôot, khun mii khròopkhrua Do you have a family?
 léew rýjan khráp
- A: mii léew khráp, tè weelaanîi, I do, but at present
 phǒm jùu khondiaw I live by myself.
- B: thammaj lâ khráp, phanrajaa ka Why? Are your wife and
 lôuklôuk khǒon khun jùu thîi children in America?
 ameerikaa rǎkhráp

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>A: plàaw khráp
kháw jaŋ jùu thîi krunthêep, phró
kòon thîi phóm ca maa thîinîi,
phóm thamnaan thîi krunthêep</p> | <p>No, they aren't.
They're still in Bangkok,
because before I came here
I worked in Bangkok.</p> |
| <p>B: khun mii bùt kîi khon khráp</p> | <p>How many children do
you have?</p> |
| <p>A: sǒŋ khon khráp</p> | <p>Two.</p> |
| <p>B: phûujǐn rý phûuchaaŋ khráp</p> | <p>Girls or boys?</p> |
| <p>A: khontoo pen phûujǐn, khonlék
pen phûuchaaŋ</p> | <p>The oldest is a girl;
the youngest, a boy.</p> |
| <p>B: aajú thâwraŋ khráp</p> | <p>What ages?</p> |
| <p>A: khontoo aajú sǐp khùap,
khonlék aajú hâa khùap</p> | <p>The oldest is 10; the
youngest is 5.</p> |
| <p>B: rian nânsǔy thîinǎj khráp</p> | <p>Where do they go to
school?</p> |
| <p>A: lûuk phóm rǎkhráp
khonnyn rian thîi roonrian
naanaachâat, ìik khonnyn jaŋ
mâj rian nânsǔy</p> | <p>My children?
One goes to the Inter-
national School; the
other doesn't go to
school yet.</p> |
| <p>B: roonrian naanaachâat pen roonrian
khǒŋ ameerikan, châj máj khráp</p> | <p>The International School
is the American School,
isn't it?</p> |
| <p>A: châj khráp
tèe kháw mii khruu lé nâkrian
châat òyn òyn lǎaj khon</p> | <p>Yes, it is.
But they have many
teachers and students
of other nationalities.</p> |
| <p>B: roonrian níi jùu thîinǎj khráp</p> | <p>Where is that school?</p> |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- A: jùu thîi sɔɔj rûamcaj, thanǎn
sukhǔmwít khráp It's at Ruamchaj Lane
Sukhumwit Road.
- B: phǎm jan mǎj khǎej paj sǎmnáknaan
juusít læej, jùu thîinǎj khráp I've never been to (the
USIS (office)). Where
is it?
- A: jùu klâjklâj katalàat khráp.wanlǎn
wanlǎn chǎen paj jîam raw
bǎan nakhráp It's quite close to the
market. Why don't you
come over and visit us
some day?
- B: khòɔpkhun khráp Thank you.
thîithamnaan khǎɔɔkhun pǎet
kîi moon khráp When does your office
open?
- A: hǎnsamùt pǎet weelaa thîan,
pít raaw nýnthûm tɛs phǎm khâw
thamnaan weelaa sǎɔn moon khrýn,
lêek hǎa moon jen The library opens at
noon, (and) closes
around 7 p.m. but I
begin at 8.30 a.m.,
and quit at 5 p.m.
- B: nǎn, wanlǎn phǎm ca paj jîam khun.
phǎm laa kòon nakhráp.
ca rîip paj thúra Then someday I'll go
visit you. I'll say
'Goodbye'. I have
urgent business (to
take care of).
- A: khráp All right.
wǎn wǎa raw khon dǎj phóp kan òik I hope we'll meet again.

15.1 QUESTIONS ON THE INTERVIEW

- a) khun thoom phóp khraj
- b) kháw khǎej rúucàk kan mǎj
- c) khun thoom pen khraj
- d) khun thoom tɛnnaan léew rýjan

- e) weelaaníi khun thoóm jùu kakhraj, thammaj
- f) thammaj phanrajaa kalûuklûuk khǒŋkháw jaŋ jùu thîi
krunthêep
- g) lûuk khontoo khǒŋkhun thoóm aajú thâwràj
- h) kháw rian nǎnsǎy thîinǎj
- i) roonrian naanaachâat mii khon châat òyn òyn máj
- j) sǎmnáknaan juusít thîi khoorâat jùu klaj càak talàat máj
- k) khun thoóm khâw thamnaan kîi moon
- l) kháw lêek naan kîi moon
- m) hŋsamùt pèet kîi moon, pít kîi moon
- n) khun méen ca rîip paj nǎj

15.2 EXERCISES

One student will take the part of a Thai and will interview another student who will take the part of an American who has just arrived in a provincial city in Thailand for duty. The interview should follow the general format of the one in 15.0 but additional material may be included. As far as possible, all information given should be correct. The other students in the class should take notes on the interview and be prepared to answer questions about the information contained in it.

15.3 VOCABULARY

jîam	to visit
khâw	to begin (to work, to learn), enter
khon (ca)	probably
laa	to say goodbye (said only by person leaving)
lêek	quit, finish, to be over or through
méen	Maen (male or female first name)

phonlaryan (khon)	civilian
phró	because
raaw	around, about
rīp	to hurry, to be urgent
roonrian naanaachâat (roonrian)	The International School
rûam caj	Ruam chaj (name of lane on Sukhumwit Road)
sămnáknaan (hèn)	office (of an agency, etc.)
sɔɔj	lane (narrow street)
sukhŭmwít	Sukhumwit Road
thoom	Tom (a name)
thammaj	why (question word)
wanlăŋ	some day (in the future)
wăŋ	to hope
weelaaníi	at present

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON SIXTEEN

16.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions (2)

- A: khǒothôot khráp, prajsanii klaan paj thaannǎj Excuse me, which way is the main Post Office?
- B: tron paj khâannâa khráp Straight ahead.
- A: khòopkhun khráp Thank you.

(10 minutes later)

- A: khǒothôot khráp, nîi prajsanii klaan, chāj māj Excuse me, this is the main Post Office, isn't it?
- B: chāj khráp Yes, it is.
- A: thîisòn thooralêek jùu tronǎj, sâap māj khráp Where's the place to send telegrams, do you know?
- B: jùu khâannaj khráp It's inside.
- A: paj thaannǎj khráp Which way do you go?
- B: dæen tron khâw paj khâannaj, l'èsw líaw khwǎa, thîisòn thooralêek ca jùu thaansáaj (myy) (khǒon) khun Go straight in, then turn right the place to send telegrams will be to your left.
- A: khòopkhun mâak khráp Thank you very much.
- B: māj pen raj khráp You're welcome.

16.1 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. nánsǎy phǒm jùu naj hǒn
My book is in the room.
2. thǎisǒn thooralêek jùu naj tỳk
The place to send telegrams
is in the building.
3. thǎi thamkaan prajsanii jùu
naj roonrɛɛm
The office of the Post
Office is in the hotel.
4. khruu jùu naj hǒnlɛɛp
The teacher is in the lab.
5. lûuksǎaw phǒm jùu naj hǒn
My daughter is in the room.
6. hǒnthabian jùu naj tỳk
The registrar's room is
in the building.
7. khun wíchaj jùu naj sǎalaa
ameerikan
Wichai is in the USIS
auditorium.

Pattern 2

- nánsǎy phǒm jùu khâanaj
My book is inside.
- thǎisǒn thooralêek jùu khâanaj
The place to send telegrams
is inside.
- thǎi thamkaan prajsanii jùu
khâanaj
The office of the Post
Office is inside.
- khruu jùu khâanaj
The teacher is inside.
- lûuksǎaw phǒm jùu khâanaj
My daughter is inside.
- hǒnthabian jùu khâanaj
The registrar's room
is inside.
- khun wíchaj jùu khâanaj
Wichai is inside.

b) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. phyan phǒm jùu nǒok hǎnrian
My friend is outside
the classroom.
2. roonrót jùu nǒok bāan
The garage is outside
the house.
3. phanrajaa phǒm jùu nǒokbāan
My wife is outside the
house.
4. ráanaahǎan jùu nǒok tỳk rian
The restaurant is outside
the school building.
5. khruu jùu nǒok hǎnrian
The teacher is outside
the classroom.
6. lûuk phǒm jùu nǒok bāan
My children are outside
the house.

Pattern 2

- phan phǒm jùu khâanǒok
My friend is outside.
- roonrót jùu khâanǒok
The garage is outside.
- phanrajaa phǒm jùu khâanǒok
My wife is outside.
- ráanaahǎan jùu khâanǒok
The restaurant is outside.
- khruu jùu khâanǒok
The teacher is outside.
- lûuk phǒm jùu khâanǒok
My children are outside.

c) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. kháw jùu nâa raw
He is in front of us.
2. khruu jùu nâa chán
The teacher is in front
of the class.
3. pâajrótmee jùu nâa roonrian
The bus stop is in front
of the school.
4. ráanaahăan jùu nâa hooten
The restaurant is in
front of the hotel.
5. rôt jùu nâa bâan
The car is in front of
the house.

Pattern 2

- kháw jùu khâanâa
He is in front.
- khruu jùu khâanâa
The teacher is in front.
- pâajrótmee jùu khâanâa
The bus stop is in front.
- râanaahăan jùu khâanâa
The restaurant is in
front.
- rôt jùu khâanâa
The car is in front.

d) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. thîi còot rôt jùu lăn bâan
The parking lot is behind
the house.
2. kâw îi jùu lăn chán
The chairs are in the
back of the class.

Pattern 2

- thîi còot rôt jùu khâanlăn
The parking lot is in
the back.
- kâw îi jùu khâanlăn
The chairs are in back.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>3. bâan khǒŋ kháw jùu lǎŋ hooten
 His house is behind the
 hotel.</p> | <p>bâan khǒŋ kháw jùu khâanlǎŋ
 His house is behind.</p> |
| <p>4. pám námman jùu lǎŋ sathǎanthûut
 The gas pump is behind the
 Embassy.</p> | <p>pám námman jùu khâanlǎŋ
 The gas pump is out
 back.</p> |

e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khâanâa ahead	paj thaan nǎj Go which way?	tron paj khâanâa Go straight ahead.
2. sáaj left	paj thaan nǎj Go which way?	paj thaansáaj Go to the left.
3. níi this	paj thaan nǎj Go which way.	paj thaanníi Go this way.
4. khâanâa ahead	paj thaan nǎj Go which way?	tron paj khâanâa Go straight ahead.
5. khwǎa right	paj thaan nǎj Go which way?	paj thaan khwǎa Go to the right.
6. sáaj left	paj thaan nǎj Go which way?	paj thaan sáaj Go to the left.

THAI BASIC COURSE

f) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. māj líaw not turn	tron paj rý líaw Straight ahead or turn?	tron paj Straight ahead.
2. khwǎa right	líaw sáaj rý líaw khwǎa Turn left or turn right?	líaw khwǎa Turn right.
3. sáaj left	líaw sáaj rý líaw khwǎa Turn left or turn right?	líaw sáaj Turn left.
4. māj tron paj not go straight ahead	tron paj rýy líaw Go straight ahead or turn?	líaw Turn.
5. māj líaw not turn	tron paj rý líaw Go straight ahead or turn?	tron paj Go straight ahead.
6. khwǎa right	líaw khwǎa rýy líaw sáaj Turn right or turn left?	líaw khwǎa Turn right.
7. sáaj left	líaw sáaj rý líaw khwǎa Turn left or turn right?	líaw sáaj Turn left.

g) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. hōṇrian	kháw kamlaṇ khâw paj naj <u>hōṇrian</u> He's going into the classroom.
2. bâan khun	kháw kamlaṇ khâw paj naj <u>bâan khun</u> He's going into your house.
3. hōṇsamùt	kháw kamlaṇ khâw paj naj <u>hōṇsamùt</u> He's going into the library.
4. thanaakhaan	kháw kamlaṇ khâw paj naj <u>thanaakhaan</u> He's going into the bank.
5. prajsanii	kháw kamlaṇ khâw paj naj <u>prajsanii</u> He's going into the Post Office.
6. ráanaahǎan	kháw kamlaṇ khâw paj naj <u>ráanaahǎan</u> He's going into the restaurant.
7. roonrɛɛm	kháw kamlaṇ khâw paj naj <u>roonrɛɛm</u> He's going into the hotel.
8. hōṇthoorasàp	kháw kamlaṇ khâw paj naj <u>hōṇthoorasàp</u> He's going into the telephone booth.

THAI BASIC COURSE

h) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kháw	<u>kháw</u> kamlan òok paj khâanônók He's going outside.
2. khruu	<u>khruu</u> kamlan òok paj khâanônók The teacher's going outside.
3. nákrían	<u>nákrían</u> kamlan òok paj khâanônók The student's going outside.
4. khun ceennîi	<u>khun ceennîi</u> kamlan òok paj khâanônók Jenny's going outside.
5. phanrajaa kháw	<u>phanrajaa kháw</u> kamlan òok paj khâanônók His wife's going outside.
6. lûuksăaw khǎw kháw	<u>lûuksăaw khǎw kháw</u> kamlan òok paj khâanônók His daughter's going outside.
7. phýan díchán (phǎm)	<u>phýan díchán</u> kamlan òok paj khâanônók My friend's going outside.
8. khun mǎw	<u>khun mǎw</u> kamlan òok paj khâanônók The doctor's going outside.
9. khun	<u>khun</u> kamlan òok paj khâanônók You're going outside.

- 1) Substitution Drill (Repeat Drill g, using khâw maa
'come in' for khâw paj 'go in'.)

THAI BASIC COURSE

j) Substitution Drill (Repeat Drill h, using òok maa 'come out' for òok paj 'go out'.)

k) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kháw	<u>kháw</u> òok maa léew rýjan Has he come out yet?
2. thahǎan	<u>thahǎan</u> òok maa léew rýjan Has the soldier come out yet?
3. mǎo	<u>mǎo</u> òok maa léew rýjan Has the doctor come out yet?
4. khruu	<u>khruu</u> òok maa léew rýjan Has the teacher come out yet?
5. naanphajabaan	<u>naanphajabaan</u> òok maa léew rýjan Has the nurse come out yet?
6. khon ankrít	<u>khon ankrít</u> òok maa léew rýjan Has the Englishman come out yet?
7. phanrajaa kháw	<u>phanrajaa kháw</u> òok maa léew rýjan Has his wife come out yet?
8. lûukchaaj phǎm	<u>lûukchaaj phǎm</u> òok maa léew rýjan Has my son come out yet?
9. sǎamii khun	<u>sǎamii khun</u> òok maa léew rýjan Has your husband come out yet?
10. tamrùat	<u>tamrùat</u> òok maa léew rýjan Has the policeman come out yet?

THAI BASIC COURSE

1) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. no	thahǎan òok maa léew rýjan Has the soldier come out yet?	jan khráp Not yet.
2. yes	mǎo òok maa léew rýjan Has the doctor come out yet?	òok maa léew khráp Yes, he has.
3. no	khruu òok maa léew rýjan Has the teacher come out yet?	jan khráp Not yet.
4. no	lûukchaaj kháw òok maa léew rýjan Has his son come out yet?	jan khráp Not yet.
5. yes	phýankhun òok maa léew rýjan Has your friend come out yet?	òok maa léew khráp Yes, he has.
6. yes	chaawnaa òok maa léew rýjan Has the farmer come out yet?	òok maa léew khráp Yes, he has.

m) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. yes	kháw khâw paj naj hǎnrian rýplàaw Did he go into the classroom?	khráp, khâw paj Yes, he did.
2. no	kháw khâw paj naj roonphajabaan rýplàaw Did he go into the hospital?	plàaw khráp No, he didn't.
3. no	kháw khâw paj naj thanakhaan rýplàaw Did he go into the bank?	plàaw khráp No, he didn't.
4. yes	kháw khâw paj naj ráanaahǎan rýplàaw Did he go into the restaurant?	khráp, khâw paj Yes, he did.

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. no khâw khâw paj naj sathăanthûut plàaw khráp
 ameerikan rýplàaw
 Did he go into the American Embassy? No, he didn't.
6. yes khâw khâw paj naj sathăanii khráp, khâw paj
 tamrùat rýplàaw
 Did he go into the police station? Yes, he did.

n) Response Drill

- | <u>Question</u> | <u>Response</u> |
|--|---|
| 1. prajsanii jùu tron paj khâanăa, phôm
khuân ca dēen tron paj rý líaw
If the Post Office is straight
ahead, should I go straight or
turn? | dēen tron paj khráp

Go straight ahead. |
| 2. ráanaahăan jùu thaan khwăa, phôm khuân
ca líaw paj thaannăj
If the restaurant is to the right,
which way should I turn? | líaw paj thaan khwăa
khráp
Turn to the right. |
| 3. roonrian jùu thaan sáaj, phôm khuân
ca líaw paj thaannăj
If the school is to the left,
which way should I turn? | líaw paj thaan sáaj
khráp
Turn to the left. |
| 4. sathăanii rôtfaaj jùu tron paj khâanăa,
phôm khuân ca líaw paj thaannăj
If the train station is straight
ahead, which way should I turn? | dēen tron paj khráp

Go straight ahead. |

16.2 EXERCISES

- a) Have students take turns playing the following roles:

Student : Goes in and out of the classroom.

Student : Who is sitting in the classroom, describes what Student A is doing ('He is going out of the classroom, he is coming in (to) the classroom', etc.)

Student : Who is standing outside the classroom, also says what student A is doing.

- b) Have students take turns playing the following roles.

Student : Goes in and out of the classroom.

Student : Asks Student C questions about Student A's actions (for example, 'Has he gone out of the classroom yet?, etc.) (Both Student B and C are in the classroom).

Student : Responds to Student B's questions according to where Student A is at the time.

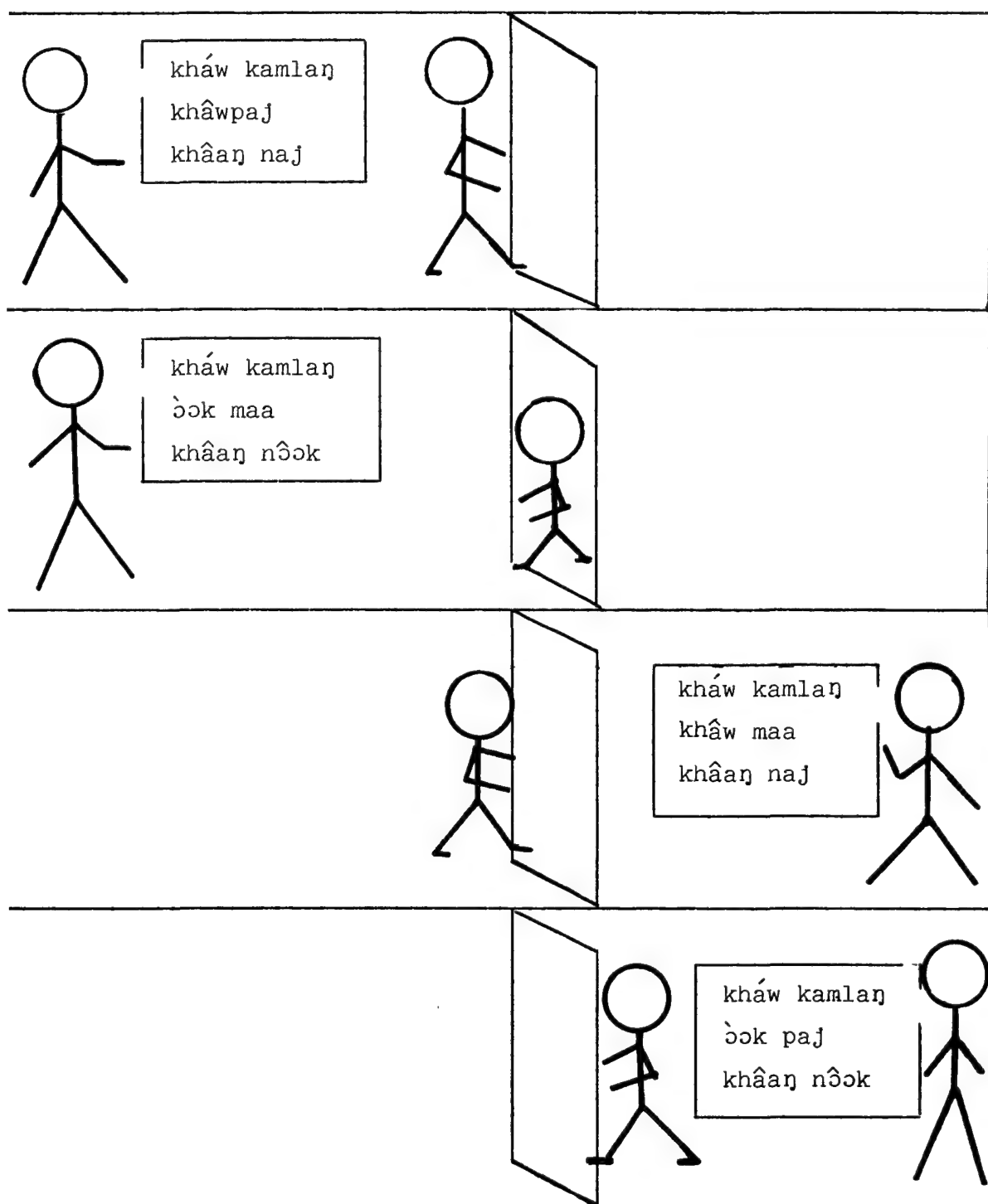
- c) Repeat exercise (b) with Student B and C standing outside the classroom.
- d) Ask various students to give directions to places in the neighborhood starting from where they are.
- e) Starting from specific places in the neighborhood, ask how you go to get to other specific places. (For Example, 'I'm at X. Which way do I go to get to Y,' etc.)

16.3 VOCABULARY

òok / maa	come out
paj	go out
chán	class
dæen	to walk
hôn̄thoorasàp (hôn̄)	telephone booth
khâanlǎn	the back, behind
khâan̄nâa	ahead, in front
khâan̄naj	inside
khâan̄nòok	outside
khuan ca	should
lǎn	behind
líaw	to turn
myy	hand
nâa	in front; face
nòok	outside
araj	what (question word)
roon̄rót (roon̄)	garage, carport
sâap	to know (a fact)
thaañ	way, path, direction
thîisòn̄ thooralêek	the place to send telegrams
thîi thamkaan	the office
thooralêek	telegram
tron̄	straight
tỳk (lǎn)	building

THAI BASIC COURSE

Chart illustrating use of khâw paj 'go in', òok maa 'come out', khâw maa 'come in', and òok paj 'go out'.



THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON SEVENTEEN

17.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions (3)

- A: khǒothôot khráp Excuse me,
khun sâap máj khráp wâa do you know where the
roonrɛɛm prɛsɪdɛn jùu thɪnǎj President Hotel is?
- B: thɪi thanǒn keesǒn khráp It's on Gaysorn street.
- A: paj thaang nǎj khráp Which direction is it?
- B: dɛən tron paj thaang níi Go straight this way
thǎy sɪjɛk to the corner
khâam thanǒn paj cross the street,
léɛw dɛən paj thaangkhwǎa then go to the right.
hooten ca jùu thaangsáaj myy The hotel is on the left.
- A: jùu tron kan khâam kàp roonrɛɛm It's directly opposite
eerawan, chǎj máj khráp the Erawan Hotel, isn't
 it?
- B: jùu jyan kan nòj khráp It's catercornered to it.

17.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The verbs paj and maa occur as postpositions with other verbs to indicate direction of motion; paj 'motion away from the speaker' and maa 'motion toward the speaker'. Observe the following examples:

khâw maa ¹	'enter (towards the speaker)'
khâw paj	'enter (away from the speaker)'
òok maa	'exit (towards the speakers)'

¹The meaning of khâw paj, khâw maa, òok maa, and òok paj is illustrated in the chart on the preceding page.

<u>òok paj</u>	'exit (away from the speaker)'
<u>thoo(rasàp) paj</u>	'telephone (away)from the speaker)'
<u>thoo(rasàp) maa</u>	'telephone (towards the speaker)'
<u>dæen maa</u>	'walk (towards the speaker)'
<u>dæen paj</u>	'walk (away from the speaker)'
<u>klàp paj</u>	'turn back (away from the speaker)'
<u>klàp maa</u>	'turn back (towards the speaker)'

- b) Prepositions such as naj 'in', nòok 'outside of', etc. may occur with nouns like khâan (or khân) 'side' and thaaŋ 'way, path' to form derivatives with the meaning 'space relationship'¹. The following are examples:

khâannaj 'inside', khâannòok 'outside', khâannâa 'in front of', khâanbon 'up above', khâanlăn 'behind', khâanlâan 'down below', thaansaaŋ 'to the left', thaankhwăa 'to the right', thaannŷa 'North', thaantâj 'South'.

17.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

- a) Transformation Drill² (Change from pattern 1 to 2.)

Pattern 1

1. roonrɛɛm prɛsɪdɛn jùu tronkan
khâam kàp roonrɛɛm ammarin
The President Hotel is
opposite the Amarin.

Pattern 2

- roonrɛɛm prɛsɪdɛn kàp roonrɛɛm
ammarin jùu tron khâam kan
The President Hotel and
the Amarin are across
from each other.

¹For a fuller description see Noss, 147 ff.

²The instructor can extend this drill and the three that follow by using other place names from the map on page 289.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--|--|
| 2. roonrɛɛm eerawan jùu tronkan
khâam kàp krom tamrùat
The Erawan Hotel is
opposite the Police
Department. | roonrɛɛm eerawan kakrom tamrùat
jùu tron khâam kan
The Erawan Hotel and the
Police Department are
opposite each other. |
| 3. roonrɛɛm sajǎam intɛə jùu
tronkan khâam kàp roonǎn
sajǎam
The Siam International is
opposite the Siam Cinema. | roonrɛɛm sajǎam intɛə ka roonǎn
sajǎam jùu tron khâam kan
The Siam International Hotel
and the Siam Cinema are
opposite each other |
| 4. sapòot khláp jùu tron kan
khâam kàp culaa
The Sports Club is
opposite Chula(longkorn). | sapòot khláp kàp culaa jùu
tron khâam kan
The Sports Club and Chula-
longkorn are across from
each other. |

b) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. diisaaɰ thaj jùu jýan kàp
roonrɛɛm présidên
Design Thai is diagonally
across from the President.
2. roonphajaabaan culaa jùu jýan
kàp (mahǎawítthajaalaj) culaa
Chula Hospital is
diagonally across
from Chula (University).

Pattern 2

- diisaaɰ thaj ka roonrɛɛm
présidên jùu jýan kan
Design Thai and the
President are diagonally
across from each other.
- roonphajaabaan culaa kàp culaa
(lonkoon mahǎawítthajaalaj)
jùu jýan kan
Chula Hospital and Chula-
longkorn University are
diagonally across from
each other.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>3. ráan ee jùu jýaŋ kàp ráan bii
 Shop A is diagonally across
 from Shop B.</p> | <p>ráan ee karáan bii jùu jyaŋkan
 Shop A and Shop B are
 diagonally across from
 each other.</p> |
| <p>4. roonǎŋ lidôo jùu jýaŋ kàp
 roonreem sajǎam intêe
 The Lido Cinema is
 diagonally across from
 the Siam International
 Hotel.</p> | <p>roonǎŋ lidôo kàp roonreem
 sajǎam intêe jùu jýaŋ kan
 The Lido Cinema and the
 Siam International Hotel
 are diagonally across
 from each other.</p> |

c) Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u> |
|---------------------------|--|
| 1. dæen paj thaang sáaj | khâam thanǎn paj, léew <u>dæen</u> <u>paj</u>
<u>thaang sáaj</u>
Cross the street, then go to
the left. |
| 2. dæen paj thaang níi | khâam thanǎn paj, léew dæen paj
thaang níi
Cross the street, then go this way. |
| 3. dæen tron paj khâaŋnâa | khâam thanǎn paj, léew dæen tron paj
khâaŋnâa
Cross the street, then do
straight ahead. |
| 4. dæen paj thaangkhwǎa | khâam thanǎn paj, léew dæen paj
thaang khwǎa
Cross the street, then go to
the right. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- 5) líaw sáaj khâam thanón paj, léew líaw sáaj
Cross the street, then turn left.
6. dæen tron paj khâaṇṇāa khâam thanón paj, léew dæen tron
paj khâaṇṇāa
Cross the street, then go straight ahead.
7. líaw khwǎa khâam thanón paj, léew líaw khwǎa
Cross the street, then turn right.

d) Response Drill

Cue

- | | | |
|-------------------------|--|---|
| 1. sáaj | khâam thanón, léew dæen
paj thaan nǎj
Cross the street,
and go which way? | khâam thanón, léew dæen
paj thaan sáaj
Cross the street, and
go to the left. |
| 2. khwǎa | khâam thanón, léew dæen
paj thaan nǎj
Cross the street,
and go which way? | khâam thanón, léew dæen
paj thaan khwǎa
Cross the street and
go to the right. |
| 3. tron paj | khâam thanón, léew dæen
paj thaan nǎj
Cross the street,
and go which way? | khâam thanón, léew dæen
tron paj
Cross the street and
go straight. |
| 4. tron paj
khâaṇṇāa | khâam thanón, léew dæen
paj thaan nǎj
Cross the street,
and go which way? | khâam thanón, léew dæen
tron paj khâaṇṇāa
Cross the street, and
go straight ahead. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | | |
|----|------|---|---|
| 5. | sáaj | khâam thanǎn, léew dæen
paj thaan nǎj
Cross the street
and go which way? | khâam thanǎn, léew dæen
paj thaan sáaj
Cross the street, and
go to the left. |
|----|------|---|---|

e) Response Drill

Cue

- | | | | |
|----|-----------|---|---|
| 1. | bàaj moon | weelaa thǎan khun ca
paj kin khâaw, ca klàp
maa kǐi moon khráp
You're going to eat
at noon. When will
you return? | ca klàp maa bàaj moon
khráp
,
I'll be back at 1 p.m. |
| 2. | sǎon thǔm | khun ca paj rǎp phǎan
weelaa jen, ca klàp
maa kǐi moon
You're going to pick
up a friend in the
late afternoon. When
will you return? | ca klàp maa sǎon thǔm

At 8 p.m. |
| 3. | hâa moon | khun paj fan théep thǎi
hǎn léep toon cháaw, ca
klàp maa kǐi moon
You're going to listen
to tapes in the lab in
the morning. When will
you come back? | ca klàp maa hâa moon
cháaw

At 11 p.m. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. khâm khâm khun paj sýy khǒn thîi ca klàp maa khâm khâm
 talàat weelaa jen, ca
 klàp maa kǐi moon
 You're going shopping
 at the market in the
 late afternoon. When
 will you be back? Sometime in the evening.
5. hòk moon mýawaanníi kháw paj kháw ca klàp maa hòk
 jen bóosatân wanníi kháw moon jen
 ca klàp maa kǐi moon
 Yesterday he went to
 Boston. What time
 today will he get
 back? At 6 p.m.
6. sǎam moon khun ca paj prachum ca klàp maa sǎam moon
 weelaa bàaj sǒn
 moon khun ca klàp
 kǐi moon
 You are going to the
 meeting at 2 p.m.
 What time will you
 get back? At 3 p.m.

f) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. sǐi moon jen	khun maa roonrian sǎam moon cháaw, ca klàp (paj) bâan kǐi moon You came to school at 9. What time are you going home?	ca klàp (paj) bâan sǐi moon jen khráp At 4 p.m.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | | |
|----|-------------------|---|---|
| 2. | hâa moon
khrÿn | khun maa thîi thamnaan moon
cháaw, ca klàp (paj) bâan
kîi moon

You came to the office
at 7. When will you go
home? | ca klàp (paj) bâan
hâa moon khrÿn

At 5.30 p.m. |
| 3. | jen jen | bàajníi khun ca paj hăa mǎo,
khun ca klàp (paj) bâan kîi
moon

You're going to the
doctor's this afternoon.
What time will you go home? | ca klàp (paj) bâan
jen jen

Sometime
the late after-
noon. |
| 4. | thîan
thîan | phrûnníi cháaw khun ca paj
ráp phÿan thîi doon myan,
khun ca klàp paj thamnaan
kîi moon

Tomorrow morning you are
going to pick up a friend
at Don Muang. What time
will you get back to the
office? | ca klàp paj thîan
thîan

Around noon. |
| 5. | bàaj sǎam
moon | mÿawaanníi khun paj
sathǎanthûut khun klàp
paj roonrian kîi moon

Yesterday you went to the
Embassy. What time did
you get back to school? | klàp paj bàaj
sǎam moon

At 3 p.m. |

6. sɿi thum khaw maa naanlian thi baan khaw klap (paj)
 phom weelaa nɿn thum. khaw baan sɿi thum
 klap (paj) baan khi thum
 He came to a party at my
 house at 7 p.m. What time
 did he get home? At 10 p.m.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. no	mýacháawníi khun dēen maa roonrian rýplàaw khráp Did you walk to school this morning?	plàaw khráp (mâj dâj dēen) No, I didn't.
2. yes	bàajníi khun ca dēen paj bâan rýplàaw khráp Are you going to walk home this afternoon?	dēen khráp Yes, I am.
3. no	phrûnníi khun ca dēen maa roonrian rýplàaw khráp Are you going to walk to school tomorrow?	plàaw khráp (mâj dēen) No, I'm not.
4. no	mýakífiníi khun dēen paj prajsanii rýplàaw khráp Did you walk to the Post Office a short time ago?	plàaw khráp (mâj dâj dēen) No, I didn't.

h) Substitution Dialog: thoo maa : thoo paj

MODEL: A: phanrajaa thoo maa hǎa khun 'Your wife called.'
B: bòok wâa araj khráp 'What did she say?'
A: khǎo hâj thoo paj hǎa khǎw 'Please call her.'

Repeat the dialog substituting the following words for phanrajaa:

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. phŷan khun | 4. phŷisǎaw khun |
| 2. lûukchaa j khǎw | 5. khruu khǎon khun |
| 3. khon thaj | 6. khèek malajuu |

i) Substitution Dialog

MODEL: A: khun thoo paj hǎa 'Have you called your
phanrajaa lésw rýjan wife yet?'
B: thoo lésw khráp 'I did.'
A: khǎw bòok wâa araj 'What did she say?'
B: (bòok wâa) bàaj moon (She said) she would come
ca maa hǎa phǎm to see me at 1 p.m.

Repeat the dialog substituting the following words for phanrajaa.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. lûuksǎaw khun | 4. khun phôo |
| 2. phŷan khun | 5. khruu khun |
| 3. nóonchaa j khun | 6. khun mēe |

THAI BASIC COURSE

17.3 EXERCISES (Use the maps on pages 288 and 289 with exercise a.)

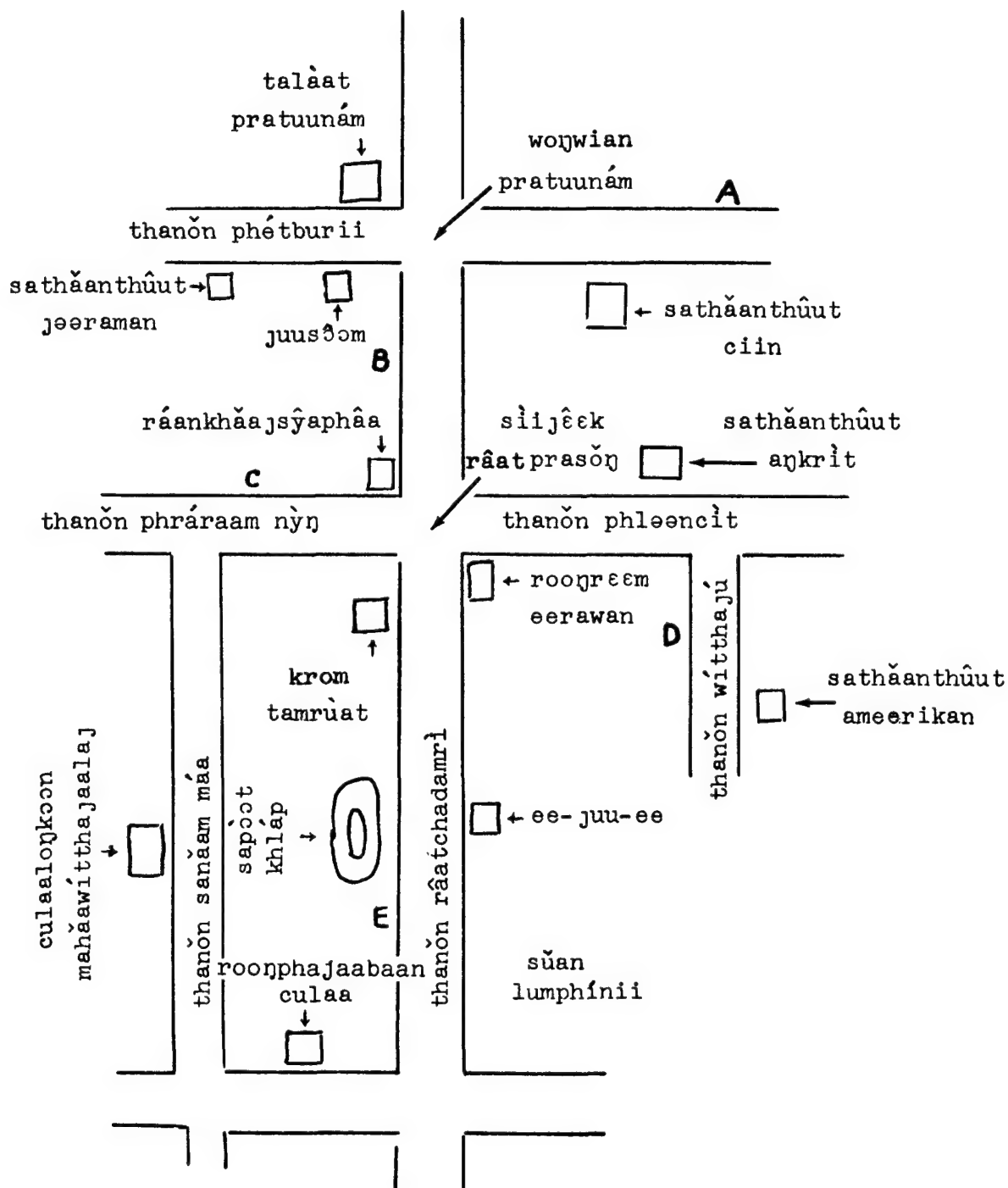
- a) One student asks another if he knows where various buildings are. A second student gives the location either in terms of another building (directly opposite the Erawan Hotel, etc.) or gives directions as to how to get there (cross the street, go to the corner, etc.) Use the points marked A, B, C, D, and E as starting points for directions.
- b) One student reports to another that someone has telephoned him. There follows an exchange concerning (1) the person that called, (2) time of the call, and (3) the contents of the message.
- c) One student tells another one that he called him up last night (or yesterday, etc.). They discuss the time of the call and the message.
- d) Each student describes a 'trip' he has made recently in terms of places visited and times of visits. Another student asks questions about the trip (the location of places visited, the time he left home, the time he returned home, etc.).

17.4 VOCABULARY

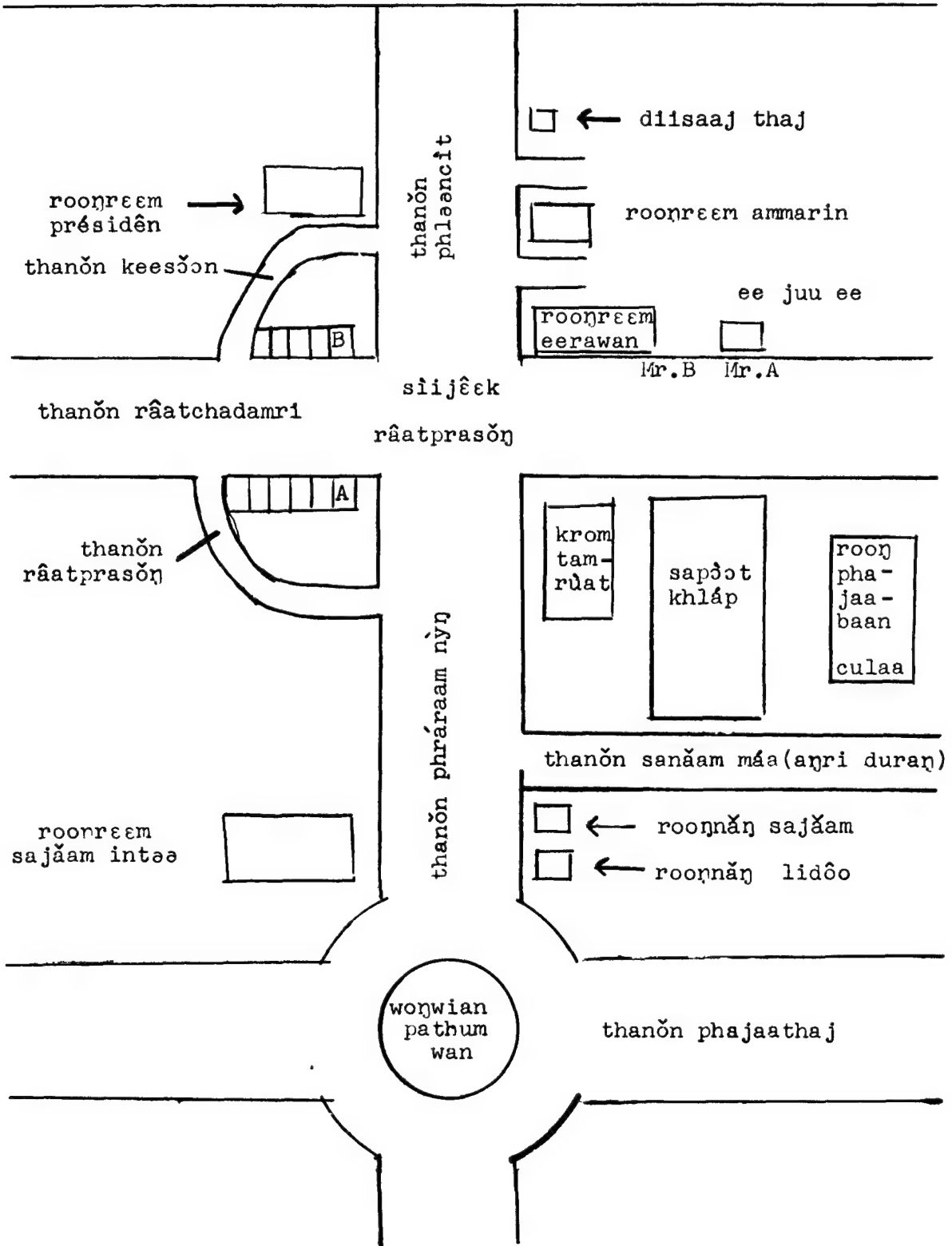
anrɪɪ duray	Henri Durant (name of a street)
amarin	Amarin (name of a hotel)
bon	above, on top of
dɪɪsaaɟ thaɟ	Design Thai (name of a dress shop)
ɟɪaŋ kàp /ka	diagonally across
kan	
khâam	to cross, across
khâaŋbon	up above
khâaŋlâaŋ	down below
lɪdôo	Lido (name)
mum	corner
naanlɪaŋ	party (entertainment)

THAI BASIC COURSE

présidên	President (English name)
roonăn	movie house, cinema
sajăam	Siam (former name for Thailand)
sajăam intəə	Siam International Hotel
sanăam máa (hên)	race track
sâap	to know
sýaphâa (tua, chúť)	cloth
thaaṇṇă	North
thaaṇṇtâj	South
thŷṇ	to reach, get to
tronkhâam kan kàp/ka	opposite



THAI BASIC COURSE



18.0 BASIC DIALOG: An Appointment

18.0 BASIC DIALOG: An Appointment

A: maa hǎa khraj khá Who did you come to see?
B: khun sawàt jùu máj khráp Is Mr. Sawat in?

A:	mâj jùu khâ	No, he isn't.
	òok paj khâanòok	He went out.
B:	ca klàp mýaràj, sâap máj khráp	Do you know when he'll be back?

A:	kháw bòok wâa ca klàp kòon thiān chæen khâw maa nân khooj knâan naj kòon sikhá	He said he'd be back before noon. Please come in (and) sit down and wait.
B:	khòopkhun khráp	Thank you.

(khun B khâw maa naj hôŋ rápkhèsk): (Mr. B comes into the reception room):

B: Ồo khởothôot, thâinâi miil Excuse me, is there a
thâinâi miil telephone here?

A: miì khâ Yes, there is.

B: (phǒm) cháj (thoorasàp) May I use it?
nòoj dâ,j má,j khráp

A. chheen khâ	Go ahead.
jùu bon tó tua nán	It's on that desk.
hễn má,j khâ	Do you see it?

B: hěn lésu khráp, khòp khun mâak I see it. Thanks very much.

THAI BASIC COURSE

18.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG:

- a) maa hăa means to come to see someone.
- b) Both săap and rúu mean to know a fact. săap is more formal than rúu. In many constructions they are interchangeable, but not in all. In the following examples only rúu may be used.

kháw rúu nănsŷy	'He's literate'.
kháw rúu phaasăa aŋkrít	'He knows English'.
phaasăa thaj khŏŋ kháw jêe	'His Thai is very bad.
măak. phŏm faŋ māj rúu rŷaŋ	I don't understand what he's saying.'

- c) rúucàk means to be acquainted with a person or thing.

18.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) Sentence embedding

One sentence (called a 'constituent sentence') may be embedded in another sentence (called a 'matrix sentence'). The embedded sentence stands in a particular relationship to the matrix sentence; for example, it may serve as object complement of the main verb, or in some other relationship. The examples below illustrate this.

- (i) jùu + Location with Motion Verbs

A: kháw	năŋ		He's sitting.
B: kháw		jùu kháaŋnăa	He's in front.
A/B: kháw	năŋ	jùu kháaŋnăa	He's sitting in front.

The sentence jùu + Location is embedded in the sentence kháw năŋ and indicates the location of the action. It has the same function when it occurs with other verbs of motion like jŷyn, paj, etc.

THAI BASIC COURSE

(ii) Included sentence as Object Complement of Main verb.

A:	khun sâap	...		You know.
B:			kháw jùu thîinǎj	Where does he live?
A/B:	khun sâap	wâa	kháw jùu thîinǎj	You know where he lives.

Certain verbs like sâap 'to know a fact', phûut 'to speak', etc. normally have sentences as object complements. wâa serves as an obligatory connector when the verb precedes its object.

(iii) khǎo as Request Form

A:	phǎm	khǎo			I request....
B:			phǎm	cháj thoorasàp	I use the telephone.
A/B: 1)	phǎm	khǎo		cháj thoorasàp	{ I request (to be allowed) to use the telephone. 'May I use the telephone?'
A/B: 2)		khǎo	phǎm	cháj thoorasàp	
A/B: 3)		khǎo		cháj thoorasàp	

Either (1), (2), or (3) may be used. (3) is probably more common than (1) or (2). There is no difference in meaning in the three. The subject pronoun may be omitted only when it is phǎm or dichán.

This request form is often followed by dâj máj khráp as in khǎo cháj thoorasàp (nòoj), dâj máj khráp, to which the response is dâj khráp 'go ahead'.

18.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

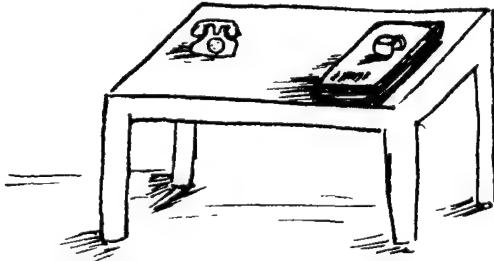
a) Response Drill (Use Chart I.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
1. thoorasàp jùu thîinǎj Where's the telephone?	jùu bon tó On the table.
2. thuâj kaafɛɛ jùu thîinǎj Where's the coffee cup?	jùu bon nánŋsǎy (tó) On the book. (table)
3. krapǎw jùu thîinǎj Where's the suitcase?	jùu bon phýyn On the floor.
4. phěenthîi jùu thîinǎj Where's the map?	jùu bon fǎa On the wall.
5. kháw jùu thîinǎj Where is he?	jùu bon bâan In the house.
6. rôt jùu thîinǎj Where's the car?	jùu bon thanǎn On the street.

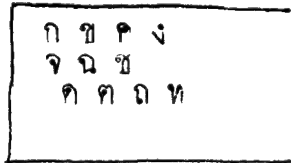
THAI BASIC COURSE

CHART I

nánsǎy jùu bon tó. thûaj kaafse
jùu bon nánsǎy thoorasàp jùu
bon tó.



krapǎw jùu bon phýyn



naalikaa jùu bon fǎa
kradaandam jùu bon fǎa
phěenthîi jùu bon fǎa
rûup jùu bon fǎa
tua nánsǎy jùu bon kradaandam



kháw jùu bon bǎan



rót jùu bon thǎnǎn

THAI BASIC COURSE

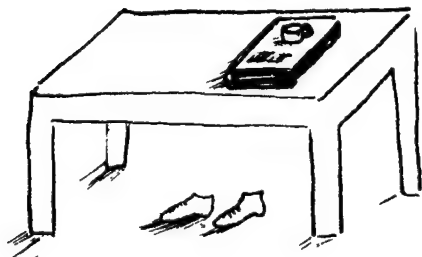
b) Response Drill (Use Chart II.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
1. rɔɔŋtháaw jùu thîinǎj Where are the shoes?	jùu tâj tó. Under the table.
2. náŋsǎy jùu thîinǎj Where's the book?	jùu bon tó On the table... tâj thûaj kaafɛɛ under the coffee cup.
3. khon jùu thîinǎj Where is the person?	jùu bon bâan In the house.
4. mǎa jùu thîinǎj Where's the dog?	jùu tâjthûn bâan In the space under the house.
5. caŋwàt udon jùu thîinǎj Where's Udon Province?	jùu nǎa khŏnkèn It's north of Konkaen.
6. caŋwàt khŏnkèn jùu thîinǎj Where's Konkaen Province?	jùu { nǎa khoorâat tâj udon It's north of Korat/ south of Udon.
7. naalikaa jùu thîinǎj Where's the clock?	jùu nǎa kradaandam. It's above the blackboard.
8. kradaandam jùu thîinǎj Where's the blackboard?	jùu tâj naalikaa It's below the clock.

THAI BASIC COURSE

tâj - bon

CHART II



tâj

nánsǎy jùu tâj thûaj kaafɛɛ
rɔɔŋtháaw jùu tâj tó

bon

thûaj kaafɛɛ jùu bon nánsǎy

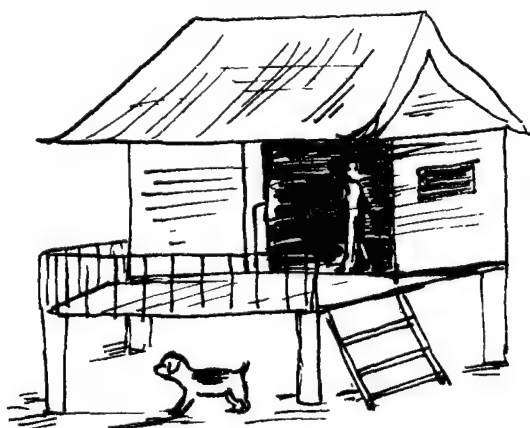
tâjthún bân : bon bân

tâj

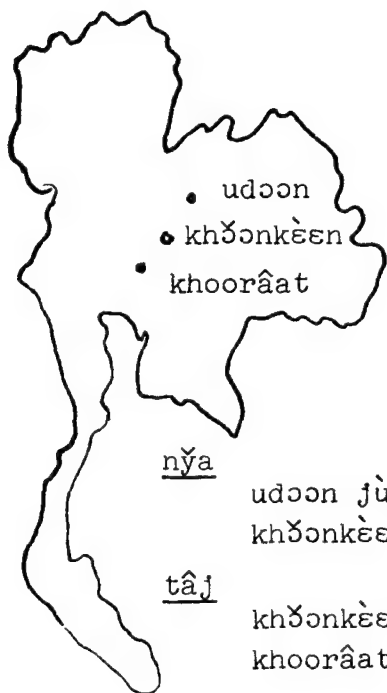
mǎa jùu tâjthún bân

bon

khon jùu bon bân



tâj - nǎa



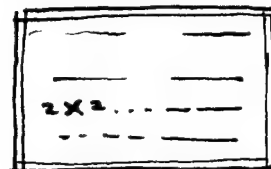
nǎa

naalikaa jùu nǎa
kradaandam



tâj

kradandam jùu
tâj naalikaa



nǎa

udon jùu nǎa khŏnkèen
khŏnkèen jùu nǎa khoorâat

tâj

khŏnkèen jùu tâj udon
khorâat jùu tâj khŏnkèen

c) Sentence Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

1. kháw nân
kháw jùu kháwnâa
2. kháw jyyn
kháw jùu kháwnkhân pratuu
3. kháw noon
kháw jùu bon tian
4. kháw nân
kháw jùu naj rót
5. kháw jyyn
kháw jùu thîi sîjêsk
6. kháw nân
kháw jùu thîi kâwîi
7. kháw nân
kháw jùu thaawn khwăa
8. kháw jyyn
kháw jùu thaawnsáaj phǒm
9. kháw nân
kháw jùu bon bân

Pattern 3

- kháw nân jùu kháwnâa
He's sitting in front.
- kháw jyyn jùu kháwnkhân pratuu.
He's standing beside the door.
- kháw noon jùu bon tian
He's sleeping on (in) the bed.
- kháw nân jùu naj rót
He's sitting in the car.
- kháw jyyn jùu thîi sîjêsk
He's standing on the corner.
- kháw nân jùu thîi kâwîi
He's sitting in the chair.
- kháw nân jùu thaawn khwăa
He's sitting on the right.
- kháw jyyn jùu thaawnsáaj phǒm
He's standing to the left of me.
- kháw nân jùu bon bân
He's sitting in the house.

d) Expansion Drill

1. nân

nân sikhráp

nân kòon sikhráp

chæen nân kòon sikhráp

chæen nân thîinîi kòon sikhráp

chæen nân khoøj thîinîi kòon sikhráp

2. khâw maa

khâw maa sikhráp

khâw maa kòon sikhráp

chæen khâw maa kòon sikhráp

chæen khâw maa khâaŋnaj kòon sikhráp

chæen khâw maa nân khâaŋnaj kòon sikhráp

chæen khâw maa nân khoøj khâaŋnaj kòon sikhráp

e) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. (kháw) ca klàp mýaràj,
(khun) sâap máj khráp

Pattern 2

khun sâap máj khráp wâa
kháw ca klàp mýaràj

Do you know when he will return?

2. (kháw) paj mýaràj
(khun) sâap máj khráp

khun sâap máj khráp wâa
kháw paj mýaràj

Do you know when he went?

3. (kháw) thamŋaan thîinǎj
(khun) sâap máj khráp

khun sâap máj khráp wâa
kháw thamŋaan thîinǎj

Do you know where he works?

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. (kháw) chýy araj
(khun) sâap máj khráp | khun sâap máj khráp wâa
kháw chýy araj
Do you know what his name is? |
| 5. sathăanthûut aṅkrît jùu
thîinăj
(khun) sâap máj khráp | khun sâap máj khráp wâa
sathăanthûut aṅkrît jùu thîinăj
Do you know where the British
Embassy is? |
| 6. kháw pen khraj
khun sâap máj khráp | khun sâap máj khráp
wâa kháw pen khraj
Do you know who (what) he is? |
| 7. kháw ca paj kîi wan
khun sâap máj khráp | khun sâap máj khráp
wâa kháw ca paj kîi wan.
Do you know how many days
he'll be gone? |
| 8. thîi sathăanthûut mîi khon
thăwràj
khun sâap máj khráp | khun sâap máj khráp wâa thîi
sathăanthûut mîi khon thăwràj
Do you know how many people
are at the embassy? |

f) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

1. ryân

kháw rúu ryân

He understands.

2. ryân níi

kháw rúu ryân níi

He understands this matter.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| 3. ryâng khon ameerikan | kháw rúu <u>ryâng khon ameerikan</u>
He understands Americans. |
| 4. bæe thoorasàp phǒm | kháw rúu <u>bæe thoorasàp phǒm</u>
He knows my telephone number. |
| 5. wâa khun pen khraɰ | kháw rúu <u>wâa khun pen khraɰ</u>
He knows who you are. |
| 6. wâa phǒm mǎɰ chǒɔp kháw | kháw rúu <u>wâa phǒm mǎɰ chǒɔp kháw</u>
He knows I don't like him. |

g) Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u> |
|---------------|--|
| 1. khun | kháw rúucàk <u>khun</u>
He knows you. |
| 2. phǒm | kháw rúucàk <u>phǒm</u>
He knows me. |
| 3. chýy khun | kháw rúucàk <u>chýy khun</u>
He knows your name. |
| 4. sanǎamluǎɰ | kháw rúucàk <u>sanǎamluǎɰ</u>
He's acquainted with (knows where it is) the Pramane Grounds. |
| 5. kham níi | kháw rúucàk <u>kham níi</u>
He's familiar with this word. |

6. khonthaj lăaj khon

kháw rúucàk khonthaj lăaj khon

He knows many Thais.

7. thaaj paj baan khun

kháw rúucàk thaaj paj baan khun

He knows the way to your house.

h) Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

1. talàat jùu thĭnăj
phǒm sâap

2. kháw thamnaan araj
phǒm sâap

3. kháw pen khon dii
phǒm sâap

4. thĕew năj mĭi ráanaahăan
diidi
kháw sâap

5. khun kèn
kháw sâap

Pattern 3

phǒm sâap wâa talàat jùu thĭnăj
I know where the market is.

phǒm sâap wâa kháw thamnaan araj.
I know where he works.

phǒm sâap wâa kháw pen khondi
I know he's a good person.

kháw sâap wâa thĕew năj
mĭi ráanaahăan diidi
He knows in which section there
are good restaurants.

kháw sâap wâa khun kèn
He knows you are skillful.

1) Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

1. nân, khraj
khun sâap máj
2. kháw chôp araj
khun sâap máj
3. hônsamùt jùu thîinǎj
khun sâap máj khráp
4. kháw maa mýaràj
khun sâap máj
5. phrûnníi kháw ca maa máj
khun sâap máj
6. myâwaanníi kháw paj
thamnaan rýplàaw
khun sâap máj
7. kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj
dâj rýplàaw
khun sâap máj

Pattern 3

- khun sâap máj wâa nân khraj
Do you know who that over there is?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa
kháw chôp araj
Do you know what he likes?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa
hônsamùt jùu thîinǎj
Do you know where the library is?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa
kháw maa mýaràj
Do you know when he came?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa phrûnníi
kháw ca maa máj
Do you know if he's coming tomorrow?
- khun sâap máj wâa myâwaanníi kháw
paj thamnaan rýplàaw
Do you know whether he went to work yesterday or not?
- khun sâap máj khráp wâa
kháw phûut phaasǎathaj dâj rýplàaw
Do you know if he speaks Thai or not?

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>8. kháw phimdiit dâj dii
rý plàaw
khun sâap máj</p> | <p>khun sâap máj khráp wâa
kháw phimdiit dâj dii rý plàaw
Do you know whether he can
type well?</p> |
| <p>9. kháw chôop thaان aahăan
faràn rý plàaw
khun sâap máj</p> | <p>khun sâap máj khráp wâa
kháw chôop thaان
aahăan faràn rý plàaw
Do you know if he likes
foreign food?</p> |

j) Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

1. kháw nân jùu thîinăj
phôm mâj sâap
2. khun mâj chôop kháw
phôm mâj sâap
3. kháw jan pen sòot
phôm mâj sâap
- 4.. kháw tènnaan léew rý jan
phôm mâj sâap

Pattern 3

- | |
|--|
| <p>phôm mâj sâap wâa kháw
nân jùu thîinăj
I don't know where she's
sitting.</p> |
| <p>phôm mâj sâap wâa khun
mâj chôop kháw
I didn't know that you
didn't like her.</p> |
| <p>phôm mâj sâap wâa kháw
jan pen sòot
I didn't know that he was
still single.</p> |
| <p>phôm mâj sâap wâa kháw
tènnaan léew rý jan
I didn't know whether he
was married or not.</p> |

5. kháw ca maa máj
phǒm māj sâap

phǒm māj sâap wâa kháw ca
maa máj

I don't know if she will
come or not.

k) Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

1. kháw tham dâj rý plàaw
phǒm māj dâj thǎam (kháw)

phǒm māj dâj thǎam wâa
kháw tham dâj rý plàaw

I didn't ask if he could do it.

2. kháw ca klàp maa máj
phǒm māj dâj thǎam

phǒm māj dâj thǎam wâa
kháw ca klàp maa máj

I didn't ask if he would
return.

3. kháw khœj thamnaan araj
phǒm māj dâj thǎam (kháw)

phǒm māj dâj thǎam wâa
kháw khœj thamnaan araj

I didn't ask what he used
to do.

4. kháw pen khondii máj
khun thǎam phýan khun
rýplàaw

khun thǎam phýan khun
rýplàaw wâa kháw pen khondii máj

Did you ask your friend
if he is a good person?

5. kháw jùu thîinǎj
khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw

khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw
wâa kháw jùu thîinǎj

Did you ask him where he
lived?

6. kháw kháwcaj máj khun thǎam kháw rý plàaw
 khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw wâa khâw khâwcaj máj
 Did you ask him if he
 understood?
7. khun sǒmsàk jùu rý mǎj jùu khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw wâa
 khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw khun sǒmsàk jùu rý mǎj jùu
 Did you ask him if Somsak
 was in or not?
8. kháw ca maa dâj máj khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw wâa
 khun thǎam kháw rýplàaw kháw ca maa dâj máj
 Did you ask him if he
 would be able to come?

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khǎo cháj thoorasàp nòoj, dâj máj khráp
 May I use the telephone?
2. khǎo thǎam araj nòoj, dâj máj khráp
 May I ask something?
3. khǎo duu nòoj, dâj máj khráp
 May I look?
4. khǎo òok kòon weelaa, dâj máj khráp
 May I leave ahead of time?
5. khǎo òok kòon weelaa sák sìphâa naathîi, dâj máj khráp
 May I leave 15 minutes ahead of time?

Repeat the drill above two times. Use phǒm khǎo... one time and khǎo phǒm... one time.

THAI BASIC COURSE

m) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. bòok	kháw <u>bòok</u> wâa ca klàp kòon thîan He said he would return before noon.
2. khít	kháw <u>khít</u> wâa ca klàp kòon thîan He thought he would return before noon.
3. phûut	kháw <u>phûut</u> wâa ca klàp kòon thîan He said he would return before noon.
4. sàŋ	kháw <u>sàŋ</u> wâa ca klàp kòon thîan He left a message that he would return before noon.
5. thoo maa bòok	kháw <u>thoo maa bòok</u> wâa kháw ca klàp kòon thîan He called and said he would return before noon.

18.4 EXERCISES

- One student asks another where various classroom objects are; another responds that they are on, above, under, etc. other objects.
- Using the map following page 74 (or a classroom map) discuss the relative positions ('north of', 'south of') of various Thai cities and provinces.
- Different students assume different positions in the classroom (standing by the door, sitting on the table, etc.). Other students describe the positions they are in.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- d) Have the students find out information about each other (where they live, whether they play tennis, if they are cold, etc.). Use conversational exchanges like the one below:

Student A: Do you know where Mr. C lives?

Student B: No, I don't.

- (to Student D): Where does Mr. C live?

Student D: I think he lives on Birch Street.

Student C: No, I don't. I live on Elm Street.

- (Student A to Student B): Did you ask Mr. C where he lives?

Student B: No, I didn't. I asked Mr. D.

Student A: What did Mr. D say?

Student B: He said he didn't know.

Student A: Then you didn't ask Mr. C?

Student B: No, I didn't.

Student A: Ask him now.

- (Student B to Student C): Where do you live?

Student C: On Elm Street.

Student B: He said he lived on Elm Street.

Student A: Thanks very much.

- e) Student A asks Student B if he is familiar with a certain person or place. Student B responds that he is not familiar with the person or place and asks for further information (where a thing is or who a person is). Student A provides the information.
- f) Student A asks the instructor for permission to perform some act (close the window, open his book, etc.) The instructor responds to the request either negatively or affirmatively.
- g) One student asks another his opinion about something. The second student gives an opinion.

18.5 VOCABULARY

๓๐	oh
bəə (bəə)	number (for rooms, telephone, clothing size, etc.)
chəən	please
chôp	to like
fǎa (fǎa)	wall
hěn	to see
hôngráp khèek (hôn)	reception room, living room
jyyn	to stand
kham	word
khít	to think
khon	person (classifier for person)
kh๓๐	to request, ask
kh๐๐j	to wait
krápǎw (baj)	suitcase, bag, purse
mǎa	dog
nân	to sit
noon	to sleep
phimdít	to type, print
phýyn	floor
roontháaw (khûu)	shoes (pair)
rúu ryan	to understand
ryan	story (about), about (classifier for story)
sák	a little, bit
sanǎam lúan	the Pramane Grounds
sàn	to order, to leave instructions or a message

THAI BASIC COURSE

sawàt	Sawat (name)
sii, sí	particle indicating definiteness or emphasis
tâj	under
tâjthŭn	the space under the house
thăam	to ask, (a question)
thuâj (baj)	cup (classifier for a cup of something)
tian (tian)	bed (to sleep on)
tua nánŝy (tua)	letter (of the alphabet)
wan (wan)	day (classifier for day)

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON NINETEEN

19.0 BASIC DIALOG: Directions to the Bathroom

- A: khǎo-thôot, hǎnám sǎmráp
phûuchaaj jùu thîinǎj khráp Excuse me, where's the
men's bathroom?
- B: hǎnám phûuchaaj lǎ
jùu khâanlâan The men's bathroom?
It's downstairs.
- A: paj thaannǎj khráp Which way?
- B: paj thaanníi
lon kradaaj paj, lésw líaw khwǎa Go this way.
hǎnám ca jùu thaaj khwǎa myy Go down the stairs, then
turn right. The bathroom
will be on your right.
- A: khòopkhun khráp Thank you.
- B: mǎj pen raj khráp You're welcome.

19.1 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Expansion Drill

1. lon down
lon paj Go down.
lon kradaaj paj Go down the stairs.
deen lon kradaaj paj Walk down the stairs.
2. lon down
lon paj Go down.
lon líf paj Go down on the elevator.
lon líf paj chán sǎon Go down to the second
floor on the elevator.

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. khỳn up
khỳn paj Go up.
khỳn kradaaj paj Go up the stairs.
dæen khỳn kradaaj paj Walk up the stairs.
dæen khỳn kradaaj paj chán pèet Walk up the stairs to the eighth floor.
4. khỳn up
khỳn paj Go up.
khỳn líf paj Go up on the elevator.
khỳn líf paj khâanbon Go upstairs on the elevator.
5. lon down
lon maa Come down.
lon kradaaj maa Come down the stairs.
dæen lon kradaaj maa Walk down the stairs.
6. lon down
lon maa Come down.
lon líf maa Come down on the elevator.
7. khỳn up
khỳn maa Come up.
khỳn kradaaj maa Come up the stairs.
dæen khỳn kradaaj maa Walk up the stairs.
(towards the speaker)
8. khỳn up
khỳn maa Come up.
khỳn líf maa Come up on the elevator.

9. khỳn up
 khỳn maa Come up.
 chœen khỳn maa kòon sikhráp Please come up first.
 chœen khỳn maa bon bâan kòon Please come in the house
 sikhráp first.

b) Response Drill (See Chart I)

1. Teacher: kháw kamlan dœen paj hônsamùt
 She's walking to the library.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
kháw kamlan tham araj What is she doing?	kháw kamlan dœen She's walking.
kháw kamlan ca paj nǎj Where is she going?	paj hônsamùt To the library.
kháw paj janṇaj How is she going?	kháw kamlan dœen She's walking.

2. Teacher: kháw kamlan dœen maa hôṇrian
 She's coming to the classroom.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
kháw kamlan tham araj What's she doing?	dœen Walking.
kháw kamlan ca paj nǎj Where is she going?	maa hôṇrian To school.

THAI BASIC COURSE

kháw maa jaŋŋaj dæen maa.
How is she coming? Walking.

3. Teacher: kháw kamlan nân loŋ bon kâwîi
She's sitting down on the chair.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
kháw kamlan tham araj What is she doing?	nân (She's) sitting.
kháw nân loŋ bon ¹ araj What is she sitting on?	bon kâwîi On a chair.

4. Teacher: kháw kamlan noon loŋ bon tian
He's lying down on the bed.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
kháw kamlan tham araj What's he doing?	noon Lying.
noon loŋ bon araj What's he lying on?	bon tian On the bed.

5. Teacher: kháw kamlan jyyn khÿn
She's standing.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
kháw kamlan tham araj What's she doing?	jyyn khÿn Standing (up).

1. This type of question is not common. It is used here in order to elicit a certain kind of response.

6. Teacher: kháw kamlaŋ lúk khÿn càak tian
 He's getting up out of bed.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
kháw kamlaŋ tham araŋ What's he doing?	lúk khÿn Getting up.
lúk khÿn càak araŋ ¹ What is he getting up from?	càak tian From bed.

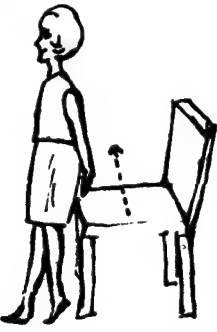
c) Contraction Drill

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. hôŋnám sámràp phûuchaaj Men's toilet	hôŋnám phûuchaaj Men's toilet
2. hôŋnám sámràp phûujĩŋ Women's toilet	hôŋnám phûujĩŋ Women's toilet
3. nánŋsǎy sámràp dèk A book for children	nánŋsǎy dèk A book for children
4. rôt sámràp thûut The ambassador's car	rôt thûut The ambassador's car.
5. thîi còot rôt sámràp câwnâathîi The parking place for officials	thîi còot rôt câwnâathîi The parking place for officials

¹This type of question is not common. It is used in this exercise only in order to get a certain kind of response.

THAI BASIC COURSE

CHART I

<p>1. kháw kamlaŋ dæen paŋ (thîi) hôngsamùt</p> 	<p>2. kháw kamlaŋ dæen maa (thîi) hôngrian</p> 
<p>3. kháw kamlaŋ nâŋ loŋ bon kâwîi</p> 	<p>4. kháw kamlaŋ noon loŋ bon tiaŋ</p> 
<p>5. kháw kamlaŋ jyyn khÿn</p> 	<p>6. kháw kamlaŋ lúk khÿn càak tiaŋ</p> 

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. tó sámràp khruu

The teacher's desk.

tó khruu

The teacher's desk.

d) Transformation Drill

Cue

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

1. phûujĭn

nĭi hōnám sámràp
phûuchaaj

This is a men's
toilet.

māj chāj sámràp
phûujĭn

It's not for women.

2. phûujàj

nĭi nānsŷy sámràp dèk
This is a book for
children.

māj chāj sámràp phûujàj
It's not for adults.

3. nākrian

nĭi tó sámràp khruu
This is the teacher's
desk.

māj chāj sámràp nākrian
It's not for students.

4. dŷym

nĭi nām sámràp chāj
This is water for
use.

māj chāj sámràp dŷym
It's not for drinking.

5. khon con

nĭi bāan sámràp khon
ruaj
This is a house for
rich people.

māj chāj sámràp khon
con
It is not for poor
people.

6. rian

nĭi nānsŷy sámràp
àan lēn
This is a book to
read for pleasure.

māj chāj sámràp
rian
It is not a text
to study.

7.	thahăan	nîi khrŷanbin sámràp phonlaryan This is a plane for civilians.	mâj châj sámràp thahăan It is not for soldiers.
8.	prathaan aathípodii	nîi rót sámràp thûut This is the car for the Ambassador.	mâj châj sámràp prathaanaathípodii It is not for the President.
9.	chaawnaa	nîi khrŷanmyy sámràp chaawsŭan This is a tool for gardeners.	mâj châj sámràp chaawnaa It is not for rice farmers.

19.2 EXERCISES

- a) The instructor will ask different students to do different things (stand up, sit down, sit down on the table, etc.). As the student performs the action, another student will ask a third student questions like these: (1) What's he doing? (2) What's he doing it on? (If appropriate)
- b) Ask directions to:
 1. Registrar's room.
 2. The library.
 3. Language laboratory.
 4. The restaurant.
 5. Other places in the vicinity.

19.3 VOCABULARY

cháj	to use
chán	floor, story
con	to be poor (in wealth)
còot	to park
dỳym	to drink
hônnaam	bathroom
jyyn	to stand
khryañbin (khryañ)	airplane
khryañmyy (khryañ)	tool
khÿn	(to go) up
kradaj	stairs, steps
lon	to (go) down
líaw	to turn
líf	elevator
lúk	to get up
myy	hand
phûujàj (khon)	an adult
prathaanaathípbodii	The President
ruaj	to be rich, wealthy
sámràp	for
thfi còotrót	parking place

LESSON TWENTY

20.0 BASIC EPISODE: Tambon Bangchak

nîi khyy tambon baançàak. tambon nîi jùu naj canwàt
hèn nỳn naj phâak klaan. tambonnîi tân jùu rim khloon
wát pen sũunklaan khõon tambon nîi. wát jùu rim khloon.
khâankhâan wát mii roonrian. roonrian nîi pen roonrian
léklék, mii khruu hâa khon. khonnyn maa càak krungthêep,
ìik sîi khon pen khon canwàtnîi. thîi roonrian mii
nákrian raawraaw róoj khon.

fàn tronkan khâam kàp wát mii talàat, ráan lé sathǎanii
tamruat. talàat jùu jýan kàp wát. khâankhâan talàat mii
ráan tàantàan chên ráankhǎajkhõon, ráantàtphǎm. thîi
tambon nîi mǎj mii roonǎn, roonreem lé prajsanii. roon-
phajaabaan kô mǎj mii tè mii sũksǎalaa. thîi sũksǎalaa
mii naanphajaabaan sõon khon. sũksǎalaa jùu klǎj kàp
talàat. thîinîi mii sathǎanii tamruat. sathǎanii tamruat
jùu mǎj klaj càak talàat.

tambonnii mii rótfaj phaan. sathǎanii rótfaj jùu klaj càak
talàat.

hũanǎa khõon tambon ríak wǎa kamnan. kháw chýy naaj prasít
kènǎan. naaj prasít pen chaawnaa mýankan. chaaw baançàak
kýap thúk khon pen chaawnaa. baan kamnan prasít jùu fàn
diaw kàp wát tè jùu klaj càak wát lé talàat. nǎabǎan kháw
pen khloon. lǎnbǎan pen naa.

20.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE

1. tambonnǐi chǎy araj
2. tambonnǐi jùu naj phâak nǎj
3. tambonnǐi tâŋ jùu bon khlooŋ rǎy mēenám
4. araj pen sǔunklaaŋ khǎoŋ tambon nǐi
5. roonrian jùu thǐi nǎj
6. thǐi roonrian mǐi khruu kǐi khon. mǐi nákrǐan thǎwràj
7. khruu maa càak thǐinǎj bǎan
8. fàŋ tronkan khâam kàp wát mǐi araj bǎan
9. thǐi tambonnǐi mǐi roonphajaabaan máj
10. thǐi tambonnǐi mǐi sathǎanii tamruat máj . jùu thǐinǎj
11. tambonnǐi mǐi rǒtfaj phaan máj
12. hǔanâa khǎoŋ tambon rǐak wâa araj
13. chaaw baançàak kyàp thúk khon thamŋaan araj
14. bǎan kamnam prasít jùu thǐinǎj
15. nǎa bǎan khǎoŋ kháw pen araj . lǎŋ bǎan pen araj

Translation of the Basic Episode

This is Bangchak tambon.¹ This tambon is in a province in the central part. This tambon is located on a canal. The temple is the center of this tambon. The temple is on the bank of the canal. Beside the temple is the school. This school is a very small school. It has five teachers. One comes from Bangkok; the other four are natives of this province. At the school there are around one hundred and fifty pupils.

On the opposite bank from the temple are the market, shops, and the police station. The market is diagonally opposite the temple. Next to the market are various shops, such as a store, and a barber shop. There is no movie house, hotel, or post office in this tambon. There is no hospital either, but there is a public health center. At the center are two nurses. The center is near the market. There is a police station here. The police station is not far from the market.

The train passes through this tambon. The train station is far from the market.

¹A tambon is a subdivision of an amphoe, which is a subdivision of a changwat. changwat, amphoe, and tambon may be translated roughly as province, district, and precinct.

The head of the tambon is called the kamnan. He is Mr. Prasit Kengngan. Mr. Prasit is also a rice farmer. Almost all the residents of Bangchak are rice farmers. Kamnan Prasit's house is on the same side of the canal (lit. bank) as the temple, but is far from the temple and the market. In front of his house is the canal. Behind are rice fields.

20.2 EXERCISE

Student A takes the part of a resident of Bangchak (precinct). Student B takes the part of an American writer who has just come to Bangchak with the intention of writing a magazine article about it. He asks questions of one or more residents in order to get information of the following kind:

- a) People (how many there are, ages, how many children they have, etc.)
- b) Physical layout of the tambon (location of buildings, rice fields, the canal, etc.)
- c) Occupations of people.
- d) Daily habits (time of eating, going to bed, going to work, etc.)
- e) Weather
- f) Religion (if there is a wat, where it is, when people go to it).
- g) Market (where it is located, when it is open, who goes there, etc.)
- h) Language (which dialect of Thai is spoken in the tambon, in the school, etc.)

THAI BASIC COURSE

- i) Health Facilities (where does one go when he is sick, if there is a clinic, how many doctors and nurses does it have, etc.)
- j) Travel experience of people (have they been outside the tambon, to Bangkok, to some other place, etc.)
- k) Any other information that may be of interest

Students should take turns carrying out each of the roles in the interview. Students not participating should be taking notes on the conversation. After each interview students not taking part in it may question other students about information contained in it.

20.3 VOCABULARY

amphəə (amphəə)	district, a subdivision of a changwat
baan̩caak	Bangchak, name of tambon in Thailand
chên	such as
fàn̩	bank (of a river, street)
hèn̩	classifier for places
hũan̩âa (khon)	the chief, head (of an organization)
kamnan (khon)	kamnan, the chief of the tambon
kèn̩ŋaan	Kengngan (last name)
kô̩	then, also, too, consequently
kyàp	almost
khyy	to be (in written language or formal speech)
khlooŋ (khlooŋ)	canal
mÊEnám (sǎaj)	river
naa (râj)	rice field
naaj (khon)	Mr. (title)
prasit	Prasit (male first name)

THAI BASIC COURSE

phàan	to pass
raaw/raawraaw	around, approximately
rim	bank, edge
sùksǎalaa (hèn)	public health center or clinic
sǔunklaan (hèn)	center
tambon (tambon)	precinct, subdivision of an amphoe
tân	to be located
tronkan khâam	opposite

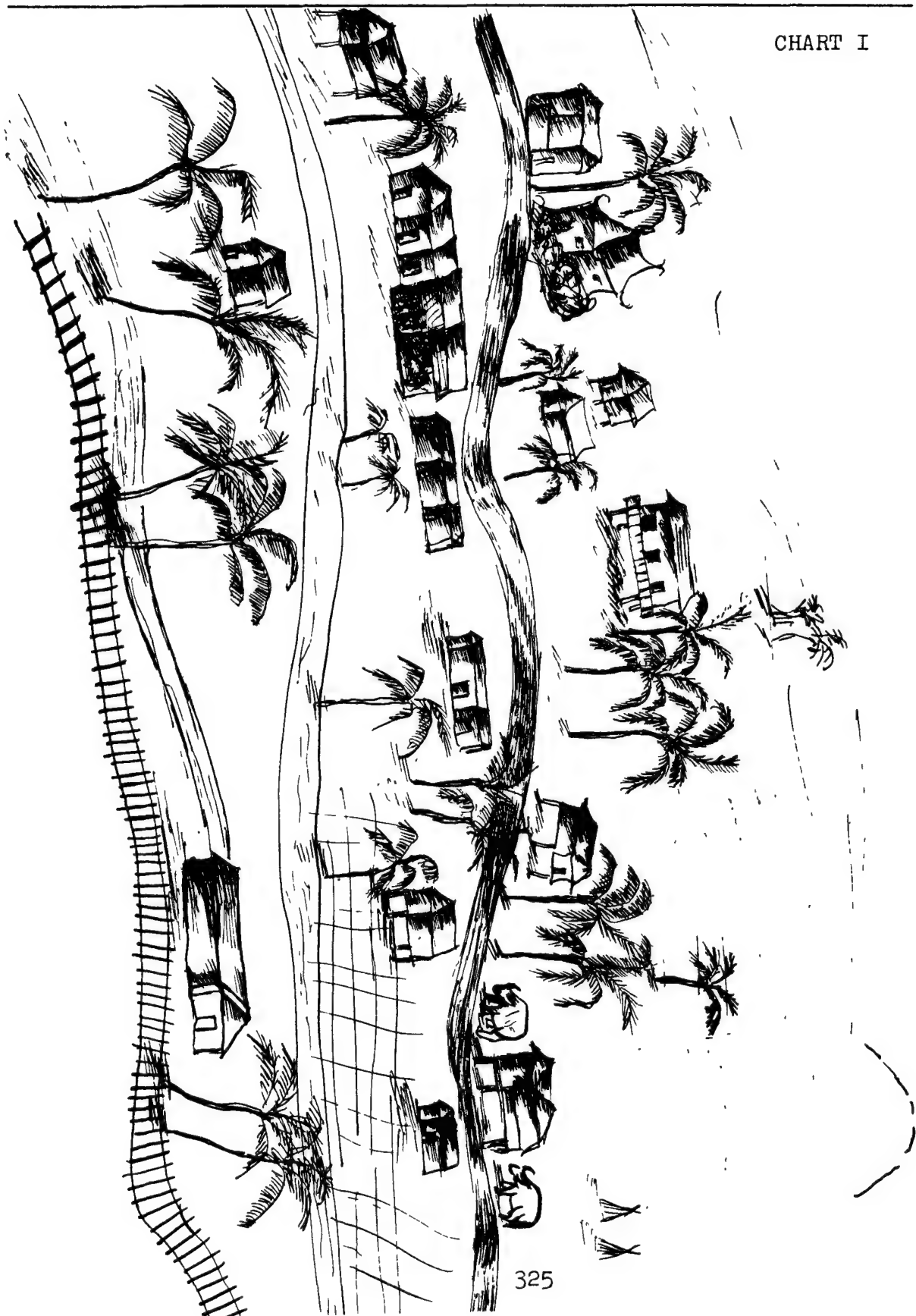
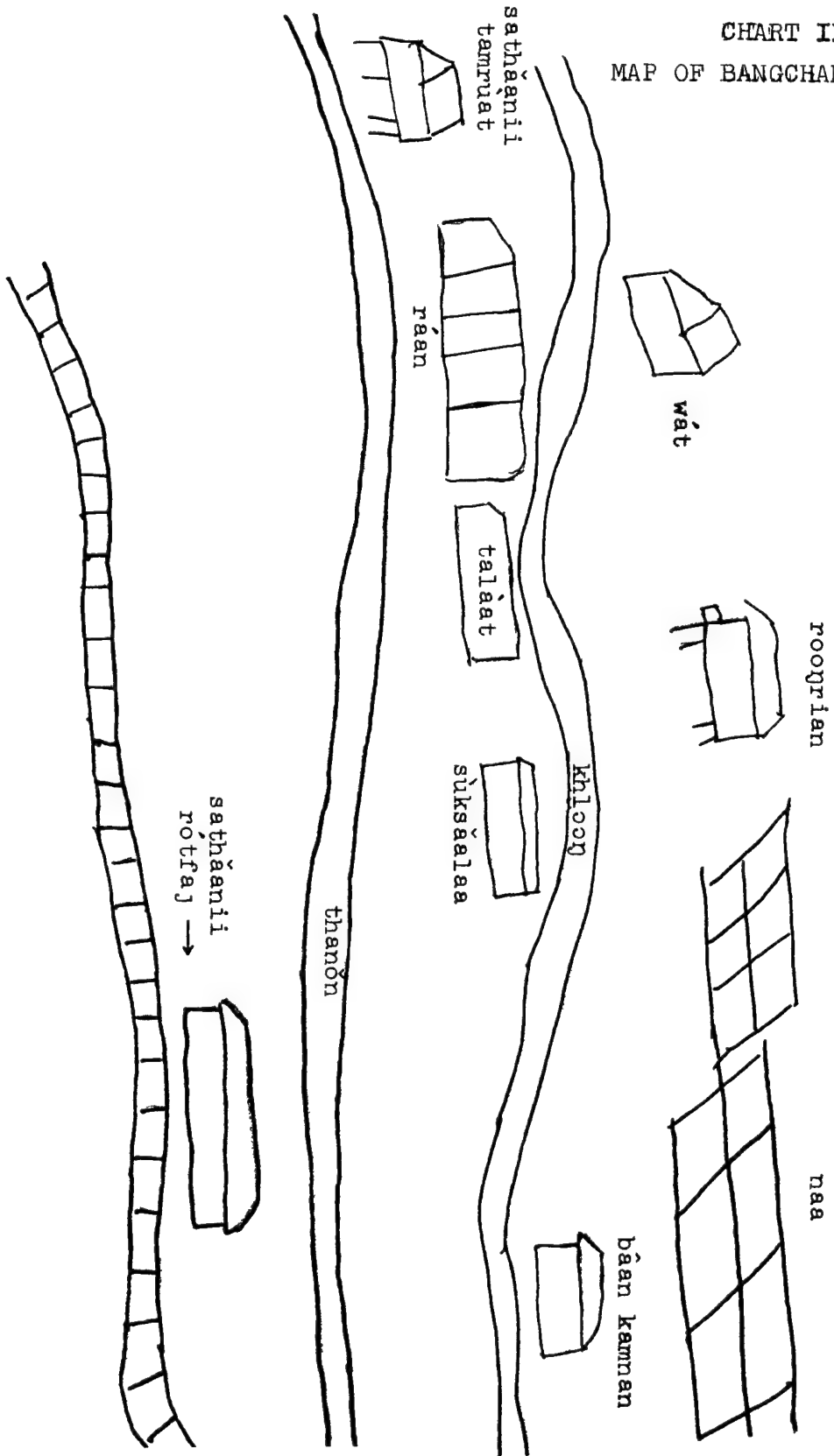


CHART II
MAP OF BANGCHAK TAMBON



THAI BASIC COURSE

COMPREHENSIVE GLOSSARY

For Volumes I and II

This glossary contains all of the words that have been used in this volume, a total of approximately 1400 entries. It gives the following information about each entry:

(1) A phonemic transcription using Roman letters with some special symbols added, and (2) English definitions or equivalents.

The entries are arranged in the order of the English alphabet except that all words beginning with vowels are placed at the beginning of the glossary in the following order:

a, e, ε, ə, i, o, ɔ, u, and y.

Noun and Verb Compounds that occur in the text are listed after the head of the compound, thus

hŭa (hŭa) head

hŭakhâm early evening (6 to 9 p.m.)

a

aacaan (khon)	college or university teacher
aachŭip	profession
áafarikaa (thawŭip)	Africa (continent)
aahăan (jâan, mýy)	food
aahăan klaanwan	lunch, noontime meal
aajú	age (in years)
aakàat	weather, air
àan	to read
aari1	Aree (male or female first name)
aa s11 ee	R.C.A.
aathít	week
âaw	oh! (excl. of surprise, dismay)
aj bèk (børisàt)	I.B.E.C. (name of a company)

THAI BASIC COURSE

ajpaanaa	Ipana
ajútthajaa	Ayuthaya (city in Central Thailand)
ameerikaa	America
ameerikan	American
ammarin	Amarin (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
amphœ (amphœ)	district, a subdivision of a changwat
amphœn	Amphorn (male or female first name)
an	classifier for inanimate objects. Careless speakers often use <u>an</u> as a substitute for other clas- sifiers.
anujâat ... (hâj)	to permit
anúrôt	Anuroj (male first name)
anúsăawarii (hên))	monument
ankrît	England, English
anrii duran	Henri Durant. (name of a street in Bangkok)
apháatmên (lăŋ)	apartment
araj	what (question word)
àt	to tape, to copy
athíbaaj	to explain
aw	to get, to take; to want (to have) cf. <u>tônkaan</u>
aw máj	will you accept? (question word. It is similar in usage to <u>dii máj</u> .)

THAI BASIC COURSE

e

ee-aj-dii	A.I.D. (Agency for International Development)
ee-juu-ee	A.U.A. (American University Association)
een	by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help of influence
tua phǎm een	I (myself)
... khǎw een	he (himself)
... raw een	we (ourselves), more emphatic than 'tua' alone
een	is used to emphasize the shortness shortness of the distance in <u>klâj khênfi een</u> 'right near here'.
eerawan	Erawan (name of hotel)
eesia (thawîp)	Asia
eethén	Athens
éf-és-aj	F.S.I. (Foreign Service Institute)

ε

εε fráans	Air France (name of an airline)
éepên (lûuk, phǎn, baj)	apple
éesphajrin (mét)	aspirin

ə

əə	by the way
----	------------

THAI BASIC COURSE

1

lik	in addition, more
lik thii	again, one more time
imphiirīan	Imperial (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
india (prathêet)	India, Indian
indianāa (rát)	Indiana
indoniisia (prathêet)	Indonesia, Indonesian
isāan (phāak)	northeast (in Thailand)
italīan	Italian (<u>italīi</u> 'Italy')
ītsalaam	Moslem

๐

ookàat (khrán)	chance, occasion
okinaawaa (kò)	Okinawa
on	classifier for Buddha images, King, Queen

๑

๑๐	Oh, yes! (suddenly remembering something)
๑๑	Oh! (I see, I get it.)
๑๑k (nən)	to put up the money for, to pay for, to stand good for
๑๑k maa	to come out
... paj	to go out
๑๑k siǎn	to pronounce, to voice
(khít) } ๑๑k	(to figure) out (a completive verb)
(nýk) }	

THAI BASIC COURSE

òon	light (color)
orianten	Oriental, name of a hotel in Bangkok
ósatreelia (prathêet)	Australia, Australian

u

ûan	(to be) fat, stout
ubon	Ubon (female first name)
ubon	Ubon (city in Northeast Thailand)
udoon	Udon (city in Northeast Thailand)
ùtnŭn	to support, assist (financially) to patronize
ùttaradīt	Uttaradit (city in North Thailand)

y

ỳn ỳn	other, others, other ones
---------	---------------------------

b

bàaj	afternoon, o'clock (used for the time 1 p.m. - 4 p.m.)
baan	classifier for <u>door</u>
bâan (lǎn)	house, home
bâanchâw (lǎn)	a house to rent
bâanmáaj (lǎn)	a wooden house
bâant̀yk (lǎn)	a stucco home, brick house (building)
baan	(to be) thin
bâan, mân	some (out of a number), somewhat, in part, partly, to some extent

THAI BASIC COURSE

baancaak	Bangchak, (name of tambon in Thailand)
baankapl	Bangkapl (section of Bangkok)
baanpuu	Bangpu (name of a tambon)
bàat	'baht' (Thai unit of currency)
baɿ	classifier for 'picture', etc.
baɿ la hâa	5 baht bank note
baɿmáaɿ	leaf
baw	(to be) light (in weight)
bèɛp	model, type, style
béɲjôɿ	small bill (change)
bəə (bəə)	number (for rooms, telephone, clothing size, etc.)
bəək	to withdraw (money), to requisition (as from a storeroom)
bəək ɲən	to get money (from the bank)
bin	to fly
bin	Bill (name)
bòk	land (as opposed to sea)
bon	above, on top of
boolɿŋ	bowling
bóssatân	Boston
bòt (bòt)	lesson (in a textbook)
bòok	to tell
bóorisàt	company
bóorisàt námman	Oil company
bóoriween	compound, area, grounds (around a building), vicinity
braaw(n)	Brown (name)
burɿl (muan)	cigarette
bùt (khon)	child (elegant usage) (one's direct descendant)
b̀ya	(to be) bored

THAI BASIC COURSE

c

ca	will, shall (future particle)
càaj (nən)	to pay refers to the actual expenditure of funds on a specific occasion)
càak	from
càkkrajaan (khan)	a bicycle
cam... dâj	to remember
camnuan	amount
caŋ	extremely, a great deal
caŋwàt	province
carəen kruŋ	Charoen Krung (name of a street in Bangkok)
cátsamèsk	JUSMAG (Joint Military Assistance Group)
câw (oŋ)	ruler (literally 'prince')
câwkhǝŋ (khon)	owner
câwnâathîi (khon)	official, officer, staff member, the man in charge
câwbàaw (khon)	bridegroom
câwsǎaw (khon)	bride
cennîi	Jenny (name)
cèt	seven
cəə	to meet with unexpectedly
ciin (prathêet)	China, Chinese
cim	Jim (name)
ciŋ ná	That's true.
con	(to be) poor (in wealth)
coo	Joe

THAI BASIC COURSE

còp	to complete a task (often of prescribed duration, such as a course of study)
còtmǎaj (chabàp)	letter (to mail)
cóoc	George (name)
coon	John (name)
còot	to park
culaa	Chula (abbreviation for Chulalonghorn University)

ch

cháa	(to be) late, slow
chaaJ (hèn)	edge, rim, border
chaaJthalee (hèn)	the beach
chaam salàt (baj, lûuk)	salad bowl
chaan (chaan)	patio, porch without a roof
châan-	a person who has skill in some craft or trade. (It is the head noun in many noun compounds.)
châat (châat)	nationality, nation, race
chaaw (khon)	resident, native
chaawnaa (khon)	rice farmer
chaawrâJ (khon)	a crop farmer
chaawsǎan (khon)	gardener, orchardist
cháaw	morning, a.m.
cháawmÿyt	early morning
chabàp	classifier for letter or newspaper
châJ	to be so, to be it, be the one (meant, intended)

THAI BASIC COURSE

châj máj	Isn't it so? Isn't it the one?
cháj	to use (to do something), be used for, to spend (money), to use up, require, take (an amount of time, effort, people, etc.)
chalĭaŋ (chalĭaŋ)	terrace, balcony, porch
chán	I, me. (Man speaking to persons of inferior status. Women use it more often with persons of inferior social status, to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.)
chán	class, rank, grade, floor (in a building), story
chánbon	upstairs
chándĭaw	one story
chánkhrÿŋ	one and a half story
chánlâaŋ	downstairs
chanít	kind, type (emphasis on type)
chát	plain(ly), clear(ly), distinct(ly)
châw	to rent
chên	such as
chəən	please, go ahead and...
chianmàj	Chiangmai (city in North Thailand)
chiaw	really, very, indeed (When it occurs after a quantitative expression, it indicates that the speaker thinks the quantity referred to is larger than he expected.)

THAI BASIC COURSE

chīawchaan	(to be) expert, experienced
chíkhaakôo	Chicago
chín	piece (of anything whole), hence classifier for piece of clothing, furniture, bread meat, bones, work (a specific task), etc.
chom	to look at, to admire, look at with pleasure, to praise
chomphûu	rose apple
chótchóoj	Chotchoi (Thai female first name)
chôo	bunch, classifier of fruit in a bunch
chôop	to like, be fond of
chûaj	please (do something); help
chûammon	hour (60 minutes)
chuan	to invite, urge, persuade someone to do something
chút	classifier for suit (e.g. of clothing), suite (of furniture), set (e.g. of ornaments, glass- ware, books), for a committee, cabinet (of ministers, for a team)
chútrápkhèek (chút)	living room furniture
chútthaankhâaw (chút)	a dining set
châyak	rope, cord, classifier for 'elephant'
chây	name, to be named

THAI BASIC COURSE

d

dâam	classifier for 'pen', etc.
dâj	can, could, be able
dâj	to get, obtain, procure
(hăa) dâj	to get (it indicates that the speaker was able to get the things he was looking for.)
dâjjin	to hear
(sǐi) dam	black (color)
dan	loud
deewít	David
dèk (khon)	child (immature person)
denwêe	Denver
(sǐi) dɛɛŋ	(to be) red (color)
dəən	to walk
dəənthaaŋ	to travel
dichăn, dichán	I (female speaker)
dii	(to be) good
diicaŋ	(to be) glad
diaw	one only, only
dǎawníi	right now
dǎaw	soon
dǎaw	or else, otherwise
diin ras(k)	Dean Rusk
diisaj thaŋ	Design Thai (name of a dress shop)
dík	Dick (name)
dinsǎo (thên)	pencil
dontrií	music
dooj	by (means of transportation)
doojtron	directly

THAI BASIC COURSE

dóktêe (khon)	doctor (Ph.D.)
dóktêe wés	Dr. West
dòokmáaj (dòok)	flower
doolâa	dollar
doon myan	Don Muang (the name of the main commercial airport in Bangkok)
duu naan	to observe the operation (e.g. of a system), observe (some- thing) in operation
dûaj	also, too, as well
duu	to look at
dyan	month
dỳk	late at night (11 p.m. - 3 a.m.)
dỳym	to drink

f

fǎa (fǎa)	wall
fáa (sǐi fáa)	sky (sky blue)
fàak	to deposit; to ask a person to carry on some business for you
fàak nən	to deposit money (in the bank)
faj (fáa)	electric light, electricity
fan (sǐi)	tooth
fan	to listen
fàn	bank (of a river), side (of the street)
faràn (khon)	white-skinned people, including Europeans, Australians, white Americans, etc.

THAI BASIC COURSE

farànsèet (prathêet)	France, French
fæen (khon)	girl or boy friend
filíppin (prathêet)	Philippines, Philippine
fǎi myy	manual skill, craftsmanship
floridâa (rát)	Florida
fòot	a Ford (brand name)
frét	Fred (name)
fríi	to be free (no cost)
fút	foot, English system

h

hâ and há	They replace the polite female particles <u>khâ</u> and <u>khá</u> respectively in informal use.
há?	It replaces the male polite particle <u>kháp</u> in informal use.
hǎa	(to go) to see, visit, to look for, seek
hǎa { phóp cæə	to meet with (indicates that the search resulted in meeting with persons or things)
hâa	five
hǎaj (paj)	to disappear, vanish, to be missing, be lost from sight
hàan	to be far apart, to be separate, to be distant
haawaaaj (kò)	Hawaii
hâj	for the benefit or in place of someone else
hâj jyyim	to let someone borrow, to lend
hanlǎo	Hello.
(fỳk)hàt	to practice, drill, train

THAI BASIC COURSE

hě̃n	to see, perceive
hě̃n ca	to think
hề̃n	classifier for places
hò̃k	six
hók cèt	6 or 7
hò̃k-sìp	sixty
hooten	hotel
hò̃t	to shrink
hò̃o	carton, classifier for packages or things wrapped in paper
hố̃om	to smell sweet
hôñ (hôñ)	room
hôñaahǎan (hôñ)	dining room, dining hall
hôñkè̃pkhố̃n (hôñ)	storage, space, storage room
hôñkhrua (hôñ)	kitchen
hôñlè̃ep (hôñ)	laboratory (English loan 'lab')
hôñnáam	bathroom
hôñprachum (hôñ)	auditorium
hôñrápkhè̃ek (hôñ)	reception room, living room
hôñrian (hôñ)	classroom
hôñsamùt (hôñ)	library
hôñthabian (hôñ)	registrar's (office)
hôñthamnaan (hôñ)	work room
hôñthoorasàp (hôñ)	telephone room
hôñkon	Hong Kong
hũã (hũã)	head
hũãkhâm	early evening (6 p.m. - 9 p.m.)
hũãnâa (khon)	the chief, head (of an organiza- tion)
hũãalamphoon	Hualampong (name of the main train station in Bangkok)

THAI BASIC COURSE

1

jaa (jàaŋ)	medicine, chemical compound
jaa hǎm	nice-smelling inhalants
jaasǐifan	toothpaste
jàa	don't (negative request form)
jâa	grass
jáaj { ^{maa} paj} (+ jùu)	to move (in)
jâak	(to be) difficult
jàak hâj	to want to, would like to
jàaŋ	kind, type (with emphasis on quality); classifier for things
jàaŋdii	good quality
jàaŋ mâak	at most
jàaŋ nǎoj	at least
jâat (khon)	relative(s)
jàj	(to be) large, big, major, main
jalaa	Yala (city in South Thailand)
jan	still, not yet
janraj, janraj, raj	how (question word)
janǎn, jàaǎn	so
jáp	to wrinkle
jeel	Yale (University)
jen	evening (used for 4 p.m. - 6 p.m.)
jé, jéjé	(to be) a whole lot, a great deal, plenty; plentifully
jêe	(to be) terrible, to be in a bad way

THAI BASIC COURSE

jæraman (prathêet)	Germany, German
jîam	to go to see, to visit
jîihôo	brand or trade name
jîipùn (prathêet)	Japan, Japanese
jîi-sìp	twenty
jindii	(to be) glad
-jon	ending of the months that have 30 days
jóom (phâa)	to dye (cloth)
juan	Vietnam, Vietnamese
júròop (thawîp)	Europe
jùt	to stop
jùt phák	to take a break
jùu	to live, stay, to be located at
juusít	U.S.I.S. (United States Informa- tion Service)
juusôm	U.S.O.M. (United States Opera- tions Mission)
jýan kàp	(to be) diagonally across (from)
jyyn	to stand

k

kà	to guess, estimate
kaafæ	coffee
kaan	work, affairs
kaanbanjaaj	lecturing, narration
kaan lýak	choice, selection (as an action)
kaanprachum	a meeting conference, session
kâan	classifier for matches
kaandaa	Kanda (female first name)

THAI BASIC COURSE

kaankeen (tua)	trousers, pants
kâaw	nine
kâw-sìp	ninety
kâw-sìp `et	ninety one
kamlan	aspect particle indicating action in process
kamlan phoodii	just right
kamnan (khon)	kamnan, the chief of the tambon
kamphuu	Kambhu (Thai family name)
kan	together (particle indicating mutuality or reciprocity)
kanjaa (jon)	September
kàp, ka-	with
kàpkhâaw	food, something to eat with rice
kaproon	woman's skirt
karákkadaa (khom)	July
karunaa	please, kindly
kasètsàat	agriculture, also the name of the university of agriculture in Bangkok
kàw	(to be) old (of non living things), former (of living and non- living things)
kâwfi (tua)	chair
kawlŷi (prathêet)	Korea, Korean
keem (keem)	game (sports)
kèn	(to be) expert, skillful (at doing something)
kènŋaan	Kengngan (last name)
kεε	he, she, they (in the third person) for children, inti- mates, persons of equal status

THAI BASIC COURSE

kêe	to fix, correct (something)
kèe	dark (color)
kèe	to, for
kéepitôn	The Capitol (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
kèsalàk	to carve or chisel (as wood)
kæen	too much
kæen paj	too..., in excess
klaw kàp	about, concerning
klî	how many, (question word)
kiilaa	Sport(s), athletics
kiloo	kilometer
kiloo(kram)	kilogram (metric system)
kiloo(méet)	kilometer (metric system)
kin	to eat or drink something (common usage)
klaan	central, middle, neutral
klaanjàw klaanmàj	not old but not new
klaanhythyn	night time (used for 7 p.m. - 3 a.m.)
klaanwan	in the daytime, by day
klaj	(to be) far
klâj	(to be) near, close
klàk	small case or box, classifier for things in such containers hence, box of matches, etc.
klàp... (paj/maa)	to go back (return), to come back
klètthoon	Gold Flake (name of cigarettes)
klòn	a small carton or plastic box
klînthaajrûup (an)	camera

THAI BASIC COURSE

klua	to be afraid of
klûaj (lûuk)	banana
koŋsǔn (khon)	the Consul
kô	then, also, too, consequently (connective particle)
kô rŷaj rŷaj	so so
kô léew kan	used in affirmative sentences to indicate preference for a particular course of action and to urge another to agree to it.
kóof	golf
kôn	bump, cube, bar (classifier for bumpy objects, e.g. rocks, lumps of clay or sugar, cubes of sugar, chunks or hunks of coal or charcoal, bricks, broken bricks, cake of soap, clouds, and figuratively, sums of money)
kôn	before, first; used to emphasize the fact that the action is to be of very short duration
koŋ	division (subdivision of a <u>krom</u>)
koŋtháp	the armed forces (of a country)
koŋtháp aakàat	the Air Forces
koŋtháp bòk	the Army
koŋtháp rya	the Navy
kracòk (baan, phèn)	glass
kradaan	board
kradaandam (phèn)	blackboard
kradaat (phèn)	paper
kradaŋ	stairs, steps
kram	gram (metric system)

THAI BASIC COURSE

krápǎw (baj)	suitcase, bag, purse
krasuan (krasuan)	ministry (division of the government)
krasuan (kaan)tàan prathêet	State Department, Foreign Ministry
krasuan kalaahǎom	Ministry of Defense
krasuan mahàatthaj	Ministry of the Interior
kratàaj (tua)	rabbit
kratìknàm (baj)	thermos bottle
krítsàkàràat	Christian Era (A.D.)
krom	department (major subdivision of a ministry)
krom tamruat	police department
kromathâa	navy blue, dark blue
krun (krun)	city (used to refer to some capital cities)
krunthêep	Bangkok
kumphaa(phan)	February
kwàa	more than, to a greater extent or degree
kwâan	(to be) broad, wide
kwâan khwǎan	(to be) wide, to be large, to be roomy
kyàp	almost

kh

khâ	polite particle, <u>statement</u> by a female
khá	polite particle, <u>question</u> by a female
khâa	servant (as in khâarâatchakaan)
khâa	fee, cost, price, value

THAI BASIC COURSE

khâacâaŋ	wage, wages, pay
khâachâw	the rent
khâadoojsaan	fare
khâajùu	lodging
khâakéēs	gas bill
khâalâwrian	tuition
khâarót	carfare
khâatittân	installation fee
khâarâatchakaan (khon)	government employee
khâarâatchakaan phonlaryan (khon)	civilian government employee
khâarâatchakaan thaahăan (khon)	military government employee
kháa	to trade, engage in trade
khăaj	to sell
khâam	to cross, across
khâaŋ	next to (something or someone), side
khâaŋbon	up above
khâaŋlâaŋ	down below
khâaŋlăŋ	the back, behind
khâaŋnâa	ahead, in front
khâaŋnaŋ	inside
khâaŋnôok	outside
khàat (tèē)	to be lacking, missing shortage of, short (of)
khàat tua	no bargaining
khâaw	rice
khăaw	white
(pen) khâj	(to have) (a) fever
(pen) khâjwàt	(to have) flu
kham	word

THAI BASIC COURSE

khambanjaaɰ (khôɔ)	lecture
khamthǎam (khôɔ)	question
khamtòɔp (khôɔ)	the answer
khâm	evening
khaměen (prathêet)	Cambodia, Cambodian
khamooɰ (khon)	thief, robber
khạn	classifier for cars, and other vehicles
khǎnnən (baɰ)	silver bowl
•khanàat	size
khanáthɰi	while
khàp rôt	to drive a car
khanɛɛn (khanɛɛn)	grade, score point(s)
khâw	to begin (to work, to learn), enter
khâwcaɰ	to understand
khâw hûn	to team up, to go into partnership
khǎw, kháw	he, she; they (third person, singular and plural). It does <u>not</u> refer to things
khèek (khon)	dark-skinned people, Moslems and Hindus in particular
khelifoonia	California
khěɲ	(to be) hard, firm, strong, stiff
khêɛp	(to be) narrow
khəəɰ	to have ever (done something), to be used to (be something, etc.)
khǎən	to lacquer
khǎan	to write
khǎaw	green (in color)
khǎaw òon	light green

THAI BASIC COURSE

khiiinóot	keynote (name)
khíit	to strike, scratch
khít	to figure or reckon, to think
khít jaṇṇaj	how is it figured (what is included in the calculations)
khít òok	to figure out
khêε { níi nán	up to (such and such a point) that near (far), to that extent
khloṇṇ (khloṇṇ)	canal
khloṇṇ tæej	Klong Toei (Section of Bangkok)
-khom	ending of months that have 31 days
khon (khon)	people, also classifier for humans
khoncháj (khon)	servant
khonkhâj (khon)	patients
khonkhàprót (khon)	chauffeur, driver
khonklaan (khon)	the middle one (of children)
khonlék (khon)	the youngest one (of children)
khonnaṇ (khon)	insider
khonnôok (khon)	outsider or layman
khonsùtthóṇṇ (khon)	the youngest one (of children)
khon too (khon)	the oldest one (of children)
khon (ca)	probably
khoolooradôo (rát)	Colorado
khôj	softly, low (of sound)
khǎo	to request, ask
khǎo jyyim/jyyim	to borrow
khǎothôot	excuse me
khooj	to wait

THAI BASIC COURSE

khoołkèet	Colgate (trade name)
khōonkèen	Khonkaen (city in Northeastern Thailand)
khōon	thing, object; of, belonging to
khōoncháj (jàan, an, chín)	something useful, utensils, things for use
khōon hâj lýak	selections (of merchandise, things, etc.)
khōonkhwǎn (jàan)	present, gift
khōonlên (jàan)	toys
khōonkèsalàk (jàan)	carvings
(khōon) naj (jàan)	is used to refer to products made in Thailand or in country
(khōon) nōok (jàan)	is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand or country
khōopcaj	thank you (superior to inferior)
khōopkhun	Thank you.
khoo sō	A.D.
khraaw	time(s) (occasion)
khraaj	who, what (in some constructions)
khrań	time(s) (occasion) classifier for time
kh ráp, há?, kháp	polite particle, used in statements and questions by males
kh rít sàk àr âat (khoo sō)	Christian Era
kh rít sam âat	Christmas
kh rít sat ian	Christian (name of a hospital)
khroonkaan	project
kh róp	to be complete (in quantity) to include all the members of a limited set of items
kh rōp kh rua (kh rōp kh rua)	the family

THAI BASIC COURSE

khruu (khon)	teacher
khryaŋ	engine; -ware
khryaŋbin (khryaŋ)	airplane
khryaŋàtthéep (an)	tape recorder
khryaŋ (cák) (an)	machine
khryaŋfajfáa (khryaŋ)	electrical equipment
khryaŋchájfajfáa (khryaŋ)	electrical
khryaŋjon (khryaŋ)	engine
khryaŋkhǎen	lacquerware
khryaŋkhrua (khryaŋ)	kitchen utensils
khryaŋmyy (khryaŋ)	tool
khryaŋnən	silverware
khryaŋpèetkrapǎŋ (an)	an electric can opener
khryaŋphét khryaŋthoŋ	jewelry
khryaŋpràpaakàat (khryaŋ)	air conditioning
khryaŋryan (chút)	furniture
khryaŋsákphâa (khryaŋ)	washing machine
khryaŋthǎm	nielloware
khryaŋthoŋsǎmrít	bronzeware
khryaŋthoŋ	things of gold
khryaŋtiikhàj (khryaŋ)	an electric (egg) beater
khryaŋ	half
khryaŋ lǎa	half yard
khuan ca	should
khùap	year (of age for people under 14 years)
khuj	to converse
khun	you (singular only) polite form
khun	Mr., Mrs., Miss (a polite title)

THAI BASIC COURSE

khun phôo	parents (polite usage)
khun mĕe (khon)	
khŭu	pair
khwaamcɨŋ	truthfully, actually
khwaamhĕn	opinion
khwaamkhíthĕn	opinion
kwâaŋ	(to be) wide, to be broad
khŷn	(to go) up
khŷn nĕn	to cash a check
khyy	to be (in written language or formal speech)
khyyŋ	night
khyyŋfǐ	tonight

1

la	question word
la, lá	per, a, the
laa	to say goodbye (said only by person leaving)
lǎa	yard (36 ^m)
lǎakhrŷŋ	one and one half yards
lǎaj	many, several
lǎan	million
laaŋsàat (lŭuk, phŏn)	bangsa (small fruit)
laaw (prathĕet)	Laos, Lao, Laotian
lǎks	Lux (brand name)
lambàak	(to be) hard, difficult, trouble- some
lǎŋ	behind
lǎŋ	classifier for houses and buildings

THAI BASIC COURSE

lâw (khùat)	liquor, alcohol (bottle)
lawnfí	these, this group
lawnán	those, that group
lèek	iron, steel
lék	(to be) small, little (in size)
lékchêe (khôo)	lecture
lêm	classifier for 'book'
lên	to play (games, music, etc.)
lé	and
leew	to be bad, poor (in quality); low (in character)
lèep (hôn)	lab (English loan)
léew	and then (sentence connective)
léew	(used to indicate completed action)
léew rý jaṇ	or not yet? (used in questions)
léew lý jaṇ	
léew lé jaṇ	
léew ý jaṇ	
léew é jaṇ	
læj	quite
læj	at all (after a negative); so, then, consequently
lêek	to be over, to end, to quit, discontinue, to give up, to break up
líañ dèk	to take care of children, to raise children
lido	Lido (name)
líaw	to turn
líf	elevator

THAI BASIC COURSE

lít	liter (metric system)
lon	to (go) down
lôok	world
lópburíi	Lopburi (city in Central Thailand)
lót	to reduce (the price), to lower, discount
looŋdoon (krun)	London
lòot	classifier for tube, tube of toothpaste
lòot fajfáa (lòot)	light bulb
lûanŋaa	in advance
lúk	to get up
lûuk (khon)	child (common usage, refers to one's direct descendant)
lûuk	classifier for fruit
lûuknóŋ (khon)	subordinate (employee)
lûukthóo (lûuk)	peach (a Chinese loan word)
lûuksít (khon)	student, pupil
lŷakæen	too..., so...
lŷak	to choose, pick out, select, elect
lŷaktân	to elect (as in a political election)
lŷan	(to be) yellow
lyym	to forget

THAI BASIC COURSE

m

maa	to come
(paj)... maa	to come from
maa kòon	previously
maa léew	ago
maa thǎn	to arrive (towards speaker)
máa (tua)	horse
mǎa (tua)	dog
máaj (an, phèen)	wood, stick
máaj kèsalak	woodcarvings
májkhlit (faj)	matches
máaj sàk	teak
mâak	(to be) much, many; a lot; very
maalíkaa	Malika (female first name)
mahǎasàk	Mahasak (last name)
mahǎawítthajaalaj	university
mai	mile
mǎj, máj	question word
màj	again, new
mâj	no, not (a negative word)
mâj châj	It is not so. It is not the one (meant). (Negative response)
mâj dâj	not, not as assumed to be
mâj khôj (ca)	scarcely, hardly, not quite, not very
mâj wǎj	can't do it, unable to, is incapable of (because of lack of physical strength of energy)

THAI BASIC COURSE

mák ca	usually, likely to
mân	some, any (pronominal, another form of <u>bân</u>)
malajuu	Malaya
malakoo (lûuk)	papaya (fruit)
malí	Malee (Thai girl's name)
mamûan (lûuk)	mango (fruit)
mankhút (lûuk)	mangosteen (fruit)
maryynníi	the day after tomorrow
míchíkēen (rát)	Michigan
meesǎa(jon)	April
méet	meter (metric system)
mesachusèt(rát)	Massachusetts
mét	seed, grain, pill; classifier for small round objects (pills, etc.)
mêe (khon)	mother
mêebâan (khon)	housewife
mêekháa (khon)	salesperson (female)
mêenám (sǎaj)	river
méen	Maen (male or female first name)
mērîi	Mary (name)
mii	to have
mii	there is, are (existence)
mii... jùu	has, have, is, are in possession of, is are in existence, is, are to be found
miinaa(khom)	March
míssís	Mrs.
místə	Mr.
mítchân	Mission (name of a hospital in Bangkok)

THAI BASIC COURSE

míthunaa(jon)	June
mítraphâap	Friendship (name of a highway in Thailand)
mít su	Mitsu (name of a restaurant)
mókkaraa(khom)	January
moon	o'clock, time
mố (khon)	medical doctor
muan	classifier for cigarette, cigar
mum (mum)	corner
mún (lăn)	mosquito net
múnlûat (lăn)	screen (for window, etc.)
mýa	used for past time
mýakíkiníi, mýakíi, mýakíi	a short time ago
mýawaanníi	yesterday
mýaràj	when, question word
mýankan, mýankan	too, also
myan (myan)	city, country (nation)
myy (myy)	hand
mýyn	ten thousand
mýyt	(to be) dark

n

na, ná	particle used to make the question sound less abrupt
naa (râj)	rice field
nâa kwâan	in front; face
nâa	width (for fabric)
nâa khêep	narrow
nâa	worthy of, leading to, or - able -(It combines with other verbs to form verb compounds)

THAI BASIC COURSE

nâa-àan	interesting to read	
nâabỳa	(to be) dull	
nâacháj	(to be) nice to use	
nâachâw	(to be) nice to rent	
nâaduu	(to be) interesting to look at	
nâafan	(to be) interesting to listen to	
nâajùu	(to be) cozy, livable	
nâakhàp	(to be) nice to drive	
nâarák	(to be) lovable, cute	
nâasǒncaj	(to be) interesting	
nâasǒn	(to be) nice to teach	
nâasýy	(to be) nice to buy	
nâathaan	to look delicious	
nâatàan (nâatàan)	window	
nǎa	(to be) heavy (of material), heavy texture	
naaj (khon)	Mr. (title)	
naajnâa (khon)	agent	
naajók	} (thân)	prime minister (short form)
naajók rátthamontri		prime minister (official name)
naalikaa (ryan)	watch, clock	
naamsakun	family name	
naan	(to be) long (in time)	
naanaaphan	Nanaphan (name of a shop)	
naan (khon)	female, Mrs.	
naanphajaabaan (khon)	female nurse	
naathii	minute	
nâathîi	duty	
nǎaw	(to be) cold	
na.j	in, inside	

THAI BASIC COURSE

(khǒn) naj	is used to refer to products made in Thailand or country
nǎj	which (one(s)) (determiner)
nák-	one who - (agent noun) (never alone)
nàk	(to be) heavy (in weigh); hard (of work); severely, very
nák	so, so much
nákkaanmyan (khon)	a politician
nákphaasáa (khon)	linguistic scientist, linguist
nákrian (khon)	student, pupil
nákrian kàw (khon)	former student
nákrian naj (khon)	Thais educated in Thailand
nákrian nōok (khon)	Thais who were educated abroad
náksýksǎa (khon)	student
nakhon rāatchasimaa	Korat (Nakorn rachasima) (city in Northeastern Thailand)
nakkhonsǐi thammarāat	Nakorn Sri Thammarat (city in Southern Thailand)
(sǐi) námñen	(to be) blue (in color)
(sǐi) námtaan	(to be) brown (in color), sugar
nân	that (one), there
nán, nân	that (determiner)
nǎn (rýan)	movie (story)
nánsýy (lêm)	a book
nánsýyphim (chabàp)	newspaper
nân	to sit
nénam	to introduce, to advise, to suggest
khamnénam	advice, suggestion, instruction
nīi	this (one), here

THAI BASIC COURSE

níi, nîi	this (determiner)
nít nòoj	a little
nítsít (khon)	student (at Chulalongkorn, Kasetsart, and the Fine Arts Universities)
niw delhi	New Delhi
níw	inch (English system)
njuu jóok	New York
nók (tua)	bird
nókjuun (tua)	peacock
nókkêew (tua)	parrot
nonjaw	Nongyaw (Thai female first name)
nonlák	Nonglak (female first name)
nôn	over there
nôn	that (one) over there, over there (pronominal)
nóon, nôon	the one over there (determiner)
nòoj	maybe used to make a request less abrupt
nóoj	few
nóoj	(to be) little, small, less, slight (in quantity)
nôok	outside, external
(khôon) nôok	is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand
noon	to sleep
nôn (tua)	worm
nóon (khon)	younger brothers and/or sisters
nóonchaa (khon)	younger brother(s)
nóonśāaw (khon)	younger sister(s)
noorawee (prathêet)	Norway

THAI BASIC COURSE

nútchanan	Nuchanan (female first name)
nýa	north, above
nýaphâa	texture of cloth
nýk	think about, can recall, can remember
nýk òok	to be able to recall to memory
nyn, nỳn	one, a

η

ηâaj	to be simple, easy
ηaan	ceremony
ηaan	work
ηaanlían	party (entertainment)
ηaan phátthanaa	community development
ηaj	variant form of <u>janraj</u>
ηán	in that case
ηen	silver, money
ηenbèek	a deposit (in a bank)
ηenthoon	change (money returned)
ηó (lûuk)	rambutan (fruit)
ηuânnoon	to be sleepy

p

pâaj (pâaj)	(traffic) stop sign, tag, sign poster
pâaj rótmeē (pâaj)	bus stop
pàak (pàak)	mouth, beak, lips, opening
pàaknáam	Paknam (name of an Amphoe)
pàaks๑๑j	the entrance into a lane

THAI BASIC COURSE

pàakkaa (dâam)	pen
páak kĕə	Parker
paj	to go
paj kòon	to go first, to go ahead
paj... maa	to come from
paj thŷŋ	to arrive (away from speaker)
(cháa) paj	too (much)
pàk	part (with <u>pàk</u> <u>tâj</u> 'Southern Part' only)
pámnámmān	a gas pump
parfīt (krun)	Paris
pŕthumwan	Patoomwan, (section of Bangkok)
pattani	Pattini (city in South Thailand)
pen	to be
pensilweenia	Pennsylvania
pentaakoon	the Pentagon
pĕst	eight
pĕet	to open, turn on (lights)
pīi	year
pīt	to close, turn off (lights)
plaasâa	Plaza, name of a hotel in Bangkok
pláatsatīk	plastic
plàaw	no (it isn't so) - particle indicating strong disagreement with the information content of the question
plĕe	to translate
plĕek (plĕek)	(to be) unusual, (to be) strange
plòotphaj	to be safe, out of danger

THAI BASIC COURSE

plyaŋ	to use up, to consume, to waste (e.g. money, time resources) the expenses; to be expensive
poon	pound (weight)
pracam	to be stationed
prachaathíppataj	freedom (also the name of a monument in Bangkok)
prachum	to meet (in a group), to hold a meeting; meeting, assembly
pradìt	Pradit (given name)
prajsaniì	the post office
prajsaniiklaaŋ	The Central Post Office
pramaan	about, to approximate, to estimate
praphâat	Prabas (Thai male first name)
prasàat	Prasat, male first name
prasèet	Prasert (male first name)
prasìt	Prasit (male first name)
prathaan (khon)	president, chairman
prathaan aathíppoodiì (khon)	the president of a country
prathêet (prathêet)	country, nation
pratuu (baan)	door, gate
pratuunám	Pratunam (name of the section in Bangkok)
présidên	President (English name)
prɛɛŋ (prɛɛŋ)	brush
prɛɛŋsǎifan (prɛɛŋ)	toothbrush
prichaa	Pricha (Thai male first name)
pròot	please (request form)
prýksǎa	to talk it over, consult
pùat	to ache, have a pain

THAI BASIC COURSE

phaa... { paj	to take, or escort someone
{ maa	
phâafâaj	cotton
phâamăj	silk
phâanajlôn	nylon
phâak (phâak)	part, region, section
phàan	to pass, to go past
phaasăa (phaasăa)	language, speech
phahônjoothin	phahonyothin Road (in Bangkok)
phajabaan	to nurse
phák	to stay at, to stop at (hotel, etc.)
phák phòn	to rest
phamâa (prathêet)	Burma, Burmese
phan	thousand
-phan	ending for month of February
phanáknaan (khon)	employee
phanrajaa, pharijaa, phanjaa (khon)	wife (elegant term)
phátlom (khrŷan)	electric fan
phát phon	Pat Pong Street (in Bangkok)
phátthanaakoon (khon)	a community development worker
phét	diamond
phétphlɔɔj	jewelry
phétburi	Phetburi (city in Central Thailand)
phèen	classifier for 'map, picture, paper' sheet-like
phènsŷan	records (phonograph)

THAI BASIC COURSE

phěnthîi (phên)	map
phæŋ	(to be) expensive
phên	just (immediately before)
phíchaj	Phichai (male first name)
phîi (khon)	older brother(s) and/or sister(s)
phîichaaŋ (khon)	older brother(s)
phîinóŋ (khon)	brother(s) and sister(s)
phîisǎaw (khon)	older sister(s)
phim	to type
phim (dîit)	to typewrite, print
phimphaa	Pimpa (female first name)
phimsǎen	smelling salts
phît	(to be) incorrect, a mistake
phítsanulôok	Pitsanuloke (city in Northern Thailand)
phii-éks	the PX (Post Exchange)
phlɔɔj	precious stones, such as sapphires, rubies, etc.
phǒm	I (male speaker)
phǒn	classifier for fruit
phǒnlamáaŋ	fruit
phonlaryan (khon)	civilian
phóp	to meet, run into (someone)
phóp... kan	to meet or see each other
phoo	to be enough, sufficient
phôo (khon)	father, male engaged in...
phǎom	(to be) thin (not fat)
phôokháa (khon)	merchant
phooŋsǎo	B.E.

THAI BASIC COURSE

phrá-aathít	Pra-aathit Street (in Bangkok)
phrácan (thâa)	Phracan ('moon'), name of the port in Bangkok across the Chaophraya River
phráraam sîi	Rama the Fourth (street)
phránakoon	Bangkok (official name of the province the city of Bangkok is located in)
phró ... (wâa)	because
phróom	to be ready, set, completed
phrûnníi	tomorrow
phrýt(sa)cikkaa(jon)	November
phrýtsaphaa(khom)	May
phuan	bunch, classifier for fruit in a bunch
phútthá sàkàràat (phooosǎo)	Buddhist Era
phûu	person, one who
phûuchaaj (khon)	man, boy (male human of any age)
phûuchâw (khon)	tenant
phûuchîawchaan (khon)	an expert
phûujàj (khon)	an adult
phûujǎj (khon)	woman, girl (female human of any age)
phûut	to speak, talk, say
phûut taam	to repeat after
phýan (khon)	friend
phýyn	floor

r

raaj la-lat	details
raakhaa	price
raamâa	the Rama (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
ráan (hèn, ráan)	shop, store
ráanaahăan (ráan)	restaurant
ráankaafɛɛ (ráan)	coffee shop
ráankhăajjaa (ráan)	a pharmacy
ráankhăajkhǒɔŋ (ráan)	shop, store
ráannânsýyphim (ráan)	a newstand
ráanmǒɔ (ráan)	a doctor's office
ráantàtphǒm (ráan)	a barber shop
ráantàtsýa (ráan)	a tailor shop
raanwan (jàan)	prize (kind)
râatcha-	pertaining to the king
râatburii	Ratburi (city in Central Thailand)
râatchadamnœn	Rachadamnoen (Road)
râatchadamrǐ	Rachadamri (Road)
râatchawithǐi	Rajawithee (Road)
râatprasǒŋ	Ratprasong (section of Bangkok)
raaw, raawraaw	around, approximately
rabian (rabian)	corridor
rák	to love
rákthaj	Rakthai (Thai family name)
ráp	to receive, accept, to take on, to eat (something)
(paj/maa) ráp	to go meet someone, to go get something

THAI BASIC COURSE

ráprouṇ dâj	guarantee, can guarantee
rát (rát)	state, nation
rátsia (prathêet)	Russia
rátthamontriī	minister (head of a ministry)
raw	we, our, us
reenuu	Renu (male or female first name)
reṇ	fast, soon, early
rêek	to be first
reṇthian	watt (measure of electricity)
rêem	to start
rîak wâa	to be called
rian	to study, learn
rîan	coin, dollars
rîip	to hurry, to be urgent
rîit	to iron (cloth)
rim (rim)	edge, rim, bank
(pen) rôok àhiwaa	(to have) cholera
(pen) rôok bît	(to have) dysentery
(pen) rôok sâjtan	(to have) appendicitis
room (kruṇ)	Rome
rooṇ (rooṇ)	bu'lding
rooṇnăṇ (rooṇ)	movie house, cinema
rooṇnăṇ khiṇ (rooṇ)	King's Cinema
rooṇrian (hên)	school
rooṇrian naanaachâat (rooṇrian)	The International School
rooṇrót (rooṇ)	garage, carport
rooṇṇaan (rooṇ)	factory
rooṇphajabaan (rooṇ, hên)	hospital

THAI BASIC COURSE

roonreem (roonreem, hèn)	hotel
rópkuam	to bother, trouble (someone)
rót (khan)	car
róttúktúk (khan)	a small 3-wheeled car used mainly as taxis
rótfaj (khabuan)	a train
rótjon (khan)	car, motor car
rótmee (khan)	bus
rótsāamlóo (khan)	samlor (3 wheeled vehicle)
rót	flavor
ro, ròk, rok, ròok, rook, rə-	particle often used with statement of negation
róoj	hundred
róon	(to be) hot (temperature)
roonthaw (khâu, khâan)	shoes (pair; one of a pair)
ruaj	(to be) rich, wealthy
ruam	include, to combine, add, add up, sum up
rûam caj	Ruam chaj (name of lane on Sukhumwit Road)
rûam rýdii	Ruam Rudi, name of a lane off Sukhumwit Road
rúucàk	to know, to be acquainted with, to be familiar with
rúu rýan	to understand (a subject)
rûup (baj)	picture
ré, rýy, rý, lýy, lý	question word
rýjan	yet (question word)
rýplàaw	question word (negative)
rýy, rý	or
rya } khrýan }	bin (lam, khrýan) airplane

THAI BASIC COURSE

rya (lam)	boat
ryabaj (lam)	sail boat
ryacâaŋ (lam)	rented boat
ryan	classifier for 'watch, clock'
rŷaj rŷaj	so so (as a response to a greeting)
ryan (lǎŋ)	house (in older Thai)
ryankhoncháŋ (lǎŋ)	servants' quarters
rŷaŋ	story (about), about (classifier for story)

S

sà wâajnáam	swimming pool
sa-àat	to be clean
sǎaj	late, the time (9 a.m.-11:59 a.m.)
sǎaj	1. classifier for rivers, canals, roads, for ornamental chains, necklaces for wires, cables, and for other line like objects. 2. line (esp. in the fig. sense of a channel, route, as in 'telephone line')
sǎalaa (lǎŋ)	a pavilion, a hall, a public building
sǎalaa ameerikan	the USIS auditorium
sǎam	three
sǎam-síp	thirty
sǎamii (khon)	husband (elegant term)
saan fransisko	San Francisco
sâap	to know (a fact)
sǎathaaraná	public (not private)
sǎathoon	Sathorn (street in Bangkok)

THAI BASIC COURSE

săathoon tâj	South Sathorn (street in Bangkok)
sabaajdi1	to feel well, be in good health
sabùuhđom (khôn)	toilet soap
sabùu(láks) (kôn)	(Lux) soap
sabùuna1 (khôn)	local soap
sabùunônok (khôn)	imported soap
sabùusákphâa (khôn)	laundry soap
sabùutha1 (khôn)	Thai soap
sadùak	to be convenient
sajăam	Siam (former name for Thailand)
sajăam intə	Siam International Hotel
sàhàprachaachâat	The United Nations
sák (or) sàk	a little, bit
sák pradlăw	a minute
sák	to wash (cloth only), to launder
sák hêen	to dry clean
sák náam	to wash (in water), to be washable
sakòt	to spell (words)
sakruu	one fourth yard
samăan	Saman, male or female first name
samăj	time, period, era, age, reign
samăj màj	modern
samăe	always, regularly, consistently
sămnáknaan (hên)	office (of an agency, etc.)
sámràp	for
samít	Smith (name)
samoosôn	club, association
samùt (lêm)	notebook

THAI BASIC COURSE

samùt thoorasàp (lêm)	a phone book
sân	(to be) short (in length)
sanăam (sanăam)	yard, field, (golf) course
sanăam (hèn)	field, (as in airfield, sports field, etc.)
sanăamjâa (sanăam)	lawn, yard
sanăambin (hèn)	airport
sanăamkilaa (hèn)	the sports stadium
sanăamlŭaŋ (hèn)	the Pramane Grounds in Bangkok
sanăammăa (hèn)	race track
sanît	extremely (sweet, etc.); close, intimate (of friends, etc.)
sănjaachâw (baj)	a lease
sanùk	(to be) amusing, to be fun, to have a good time
sawàt	Sawat (name)
sawàtdii	hello (used for greeting or leavetaking)
sawít (prathêet)	Switzerland
sàn	to order, to leave instructions or a message
sàn (hâj)	to order
sàpdaa, sàppadaa	week (elegant usage)
sapeen (prathêet)	Spain
saphaan (saphaan, an)	bridge (a structure)
saphaan khwaaj (saphaan, an)	the Water Buffalo Bridge (name of a bridge in Bangkok on Phaholyothin Road)
sapòot khláp	The Royal Bangkok Sports Club
sàpparót (lŭuk, baj)	pineapple
sàpràthum	Saprathum (name of the corner and section in Bangkok)

THAI BASIC COURSE

saprinfil	Springfield
sàt (tua)	animal
...lían (tua)	pet
satàan	satang (Thai coinage)
sathǎan (hèn)	place, location
sathǎankongsǔn (hèn)	the Consulate
sathǎani (hèn)	station
sathǎaniirótfaǰ (hèn)	the railroad station
sathǎaniitamrùat (hèn)	police station
sathǎanthī (hèn)	place, site (place equipped for particular kind of work, activity, etc.)
sathǎanthūut (hèn)	embassy
sǎw	Saturday
sèet satàan	change (in coin)
sen (tikram)	centigram (metric system)
sen (timéet)	centimeter (metric system)
sên	for rope, cord
sèt	to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)
sěen	hundred thousand
sí .	particle indicating definiteness or emphasis
sí, sī, sí	to request someone to do some- thing, to urge someone to do something that he has failed to do on the first request or obviously needs doing
sǎa	to pay out (money) to waste, lose (time) to be obligated to pay
sǎa (khâa)	to pay for something (a bill, etc.)

THAI BASIC COURSE

sìi	four
sìijêek	corner
sìi-sìp	forty
sǎi (sǎi)	color
sǎi	to polish
sǎilom	Silom (name of the street in Bangkok)
sǎisà	head (elegant word)
sǎinkháa thaj	Thai merchandise
sǎnhǎa(khom)	August
sìp	ten
sirirâat	Siriraj, name of the hospital in Thonburi
sòkkapròk	to be dirty
sôm (lûuk)	orange
sôm oo (lûuk)	pomelo
sǎmsàk	Somsak (male first name)
sòn	to pass, to hand (someone something)
sòn	to send or ship something; to see someone off, to take someone somewhere
sǎnkhǎa	Songkla (city in South Thailand)
sǎmcìt	Somchit (male or female first name)
sòot (khon)	to be single, unmarried state single person, bachelor, spinster
sòt	(to be) fresh (of fruit, etc.)
sòoj	lane (narrow street)
sǎon	to teach
sǎon dǎen	Red Arrow (name of a restaurant in Bangkok)

THAI BASIC COURSE

sɔɔŋ	classifier for cigarettes; envelope
sɔɔŋcòtmǎaj	envelope
sɔɔŋ	two
sɔɔŋchǎn	two story
sɔŋkhraam	war
sòɔp	to test, be tested
sǔaj	(to be) pretty, beautiful
sǔan (sǔan)	garden
sǔandòɔkmǎaj	flower garden
sùanmâak	most of, in the main
sùk	to be ripe
sùksǎalaa (hèn)	public health center or clinic
sukhǔmwít	Sukhumwit Road
sǔnthoon	Sunthorn (male first name)
suriwon	Suriwong (street in Bangkok)
sùttháaj	last, final
sǔunklaan (hèn)	center
sǔun	to be high, tall
sýa	refers to top garments, such as shirts and blouses, woman's dress
sýa kaankeen	suit of clothes (for men) any ensemble of clothes that includes an upper garment and slacks or pants. (e.g. women's blouse and slacks, children's coveralls, pajamas, etc.)
sýanôɔk	jacket
sýaphâa (tua, chú)	cloth
sýa (tua)	tiger

THAI BASIC COURSE

sỳksǎa	to study, learn
sýy	to buy, (with <u>khǎon</u> 'to shop')
sýy... { paj } ...fàak { maa }	to buy something as a gift or souvenir for someone
<u>t</u>	
taam	along, after; to follow
tàan	(to be) different, separate
tàan kàp	to differ, be different, distinct (i.e. from each other), to differ from
tàan canwàt	in the provinces, out-of-town
(jùu) tàan hàak	to be separate
tàan prathêet	foreign
tâj	South, under
tâj thǔn	the space under the house
talàat (hèn)	market
talàat náam	the Floating Market in Thonburi
talàat nát (hèn)	a special kind of market which is open regularly on a certain day
tambon (tambon)	precinct, subdivision of an amphoe
tam nêen	position (rank)
tam rùat (khon)	police
tân	as much as, as many as
tân	to be located
tân tɛe	from (such and such a time or starting point), since
tàt	to cut, sever

THAI BASIC COURSE

taw (taw)	stove
tawkéss (taw)	gas stove
tawríit (an)	to iron (for clothing)
teeharaan (myan)	Teheran
tenníit	tennis
tênram	to dance (Western style)
tèss	but
tèss } ta } cháaw	very early
tesnmoos (lûuk)	watermelon
tèn	to decorate, adorn (the verb in <u>tèn naan</u>)
tèn naan	to marry, to get married, to be married
tíia	to be short, low (in height)
tian (tian)	bed (to sleep on)
tíi	o'clock (for the time 1 a.m. - 5 a.m.)
tít	to get stuck (to, in), to connect, to stick (to), to attach (to)
rót tít	the traffic's heavy
tít (múnluat)	to (be) screen(ed)
títtân	to install
títtòò kàp	to contact or get in touch with someone
tó (tua)	table, desk
tòk	to fade (of colors), to drop, to fall (straight) down (from, into, onto), to fall or drop off, decrease, diminish, to set (of the sun, moon)

THAI BASIC COURSE

tòklon	right, O.K., to agree (to something)
tônmaaĵ (tôn)	plant, tree
too	(to be) big, large, mature
tooklaw (krun)	Tokyo
tòo (raakhaa)	to bargain
tòo (thoorasàp)	to make a phone call
toon	sometime, time, part of (something)
toon (thîi)	during, section (of space or time), part
tôn	must, have to
tônkaan	to want, need
tòop	to answer
traa	brand, trademark (It is sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising.)
tron	right, exactly sharp (of time)
tron (nǎĵ)	(exactly) where
tron { ka- kàp	to correspond to, agree with, coincide with
tronkan khâam	opposite
tronkhâam kan kàp	opposite
tua	classifier for 'animals, objects with legs (chairs, tables, etc.)'
tua phǎm een	I (myself)
... khǎw ...	he (himself), etc. <u>tua... een</u> is more emphatic than <u>tua</u> alone.
tua myan	the business district
tua nánsǎy (tua)	letter (of the alphabet)

THAI BASIC COURSE

tulaa(khom)	October
tûu (baj)	chests of drawers, cabinets, (book)cases, wardrobe
tûujen (tûu)	refrigerator
tỳk (lǎn)	building

th

thaa (sǎi)	to smear, spread (on), to paint
thâa (thâa, hèn)	port, harbor
thàaj rûup	to take pictures
thǎam	to ask, (a question)
thaan	to eat, drink (elegant term)
thàanfajchaaj (kôn)	flashlight batteries
thaan	way, path, direction, means
thaanḵhwǎa	to the right
thaanḵyāk	choice (as a means)
thaanḵyā	North
thaanḵsǎaj	to the left
thaanḵtāj	South
thaanḵkasèt	agricultural
thǎawoon	Thaworn (Thai male first name)
thahǎan (khon)	serviceman
thahǎan aakàat (khon)	airman
thahǎan bók (khon)	soldier
thahǎan rya (khon)	sailor
thaj	Thai
thalee	sea
tham	to do, make
thamḵnaan	to work

THAI BASIC COURSE

tham dūaj...	made of...
thammaj	why (question word)
thammadaa	usually, normally
thammasàat	Thammasart (university of Bangkok)
than	to accomplish something in time, to have time to, to catch up to
than samǎj	modern, up-to-date
thân	you, he, she (for persons of superior status)
thanaakhaan (hèn)	bank
thanaakhaan ameerikan	the Bank of America (the American bank)
thanaakhaan thaj	the Bank of Thailand
thanàt khooman	Mr. Thanat Khoman, Foreign Minister of Thailand
thanǒn (sǎaj)	street, road
thanǒn jàj	the main street
thanwaa(khom)	December
thǎn (baj)	pail
thánmòt	altogether
thaw	grey (color)
thāw kàp	equal, same in size or quantity
thāwnán	only, only that (much)
thāwraaj	how many, how much (question word)
théep	tape (English loan word)
thên	classifier for 'pencil', etc.
théeksǎi (khan)	taxi
thěew	section, district (of a town)
thěewnán	over there, that area

THAI BASIC COURSE

(kan) thè, (thè, thèet)	why not, let's
thīaŋ	noon
thīaŋ khyyn	midnight
thīaw	for pleasure
paj thīaw	to go out for pleasure
thīi	instance, case, time
thīidiaw	exactly, quite, very
thīi	may be used in the place of <u>nòoj</u> to soften a request if something is to be done for the speaker
thīi wīi (khrŷaŋ)	TV
thīi	place; at, in (means 'place where' as head of noun compounds)
thīi nǎj	where (as question word); any- where (in negative statement)
thīinān	there
thīinīi	here
thīinōon	way over there
thīicòetrót (thīi)	parking lot
thīilēsknēn	place to exchange money
thīiprachum (hēn)	a meeting (place), assembly, gathering (of people)
thīisòŋ thooralēek	the place to send telegrams
thīithamŋaan (hēn, thīi)	office
thīithamkaan	the office
thīi	form that is used with numerals to form ordinal numbers, hence <u>thīi sǎam</u> 'third', etc.
thīi nŷn	first
thīi sǎam	third

THAI BASIC COURSE

thîi sîi	fourth
thîi sǝŋ	second, etc.
thîisùt	superlative most, -est (occurs in construction with stative verbs)
thîi	that, which (connective)
thîi lésw	ago
(aathít) thîi lésw	last (week, etc.)
thîi-	means 'simple device' when used as the head of certain noun compounds.
thîitiikhàj (thîi)	an ordinary (egg) beater
thîipèetkrapǝŋ (thîi)	an ordinary can opener
thîip	to ride, pedal
thîp thǝŋ	Tip Top (name of a coffee shop)
thǝm	to make nielloware
thon	to be durable, lasting, to last, to endure
thonabàt	bank note
thonburii	Thonburii, name of a province in Thailand. It used to be the capital during the period from 1767 through 1782.
thoomás	Thomas
thooralêek (chabàp)	telegram
thoo (rasàp)	
.... (rasàp) paj	to telephone, to call
.... (rasàp) maa	
thoorathát (khýaŋ)	
thoo (phâa)	T.V.
thoom	to weave cloth
thoon	Tom (a name)
thoon	to give change (money)

THAI BASIC COURSE

thooŋ	gold
thóoŋ (thóoŋ)	stomach, intestinal area
thooŋlǎŋ	bronze (the market term)
thooŋsǎmrít	bronze (technical name)
thûaj (baj)	cup (classifier for a cup of something)
thûan	exactly (in amount), complete (exact in amount), in a round number
thúk	every, each
thun (thun)	a grant, fund, investment, a scholarship, a fellowship
thǔŋ (baj)	a bag
thûm	o'clock, (used for 7 p.m. - 11 p.m.)
thurá	business, affairs, errands
paj thurá	to go out on business
thúrian (lûuk)	durian (fruit)
thùuk	(to be) right, correct
thûut (khon)	the ambassador (common usage)
thǔŋ, thýŋ	to reach, get to; that, so, then, if it comes to the point that

W

wâa	to say, criticize, to think, to have an opinion; that (when used with verbs like <u>phûut</u>)
wâajnáam	to swim
waansyyn(níi)	the day before yesterday
wâan	(to be) sweet (in flavor)

THAI BASIC COURSE

waaníi	Wanee (female first name)
wâan	(to be) free, not busy, not occupied
wâj	a salute made by placing the hands palm to palm and raising them towards the face
wájt	White (English name)
wan (wan)	day (classifier for day)
wanníi	today
wanaŋkhaan	Tuesday
wanathít	Sunday
wancan	Monday
wanph(a)rýhàt	Thursday
wanphút	Wednesday
wansǎw	Saturday
wansùk	Friday
wanlǎŋ	some day (in the future)
wanphrá	Buddhist day of worship
wanthíi	date; (the... th)
wǎŋ	to hope
(pen) wàt	(to have) a cold
wát (wát)	temple, temple compound
wátthanátham	culture
weelaa	time (to do something, etc.)
weelaaníi	at present
wé	to stop in, over
wæecinia (rát)	Virginia
wíatnaam (prathêet)	Vietnam, Vietnamese
wíchaj	Wichai (male first name)
wǐi	bunch, classifier for bunch of bananas

THAI BASIC COURSE

wítsawákoon (khon)	an engineer
wítthajú (khrýan, an)	radio; Withayu (Thai name of a street); Wireless Road (English name)
wóochintân	Washington